

ISO/IEC JTC 1/SC 32 N 0640

Date: 2001-05-15

REPLACES: --

<p style="text-align: center;">ISO/IEC JTC 1/SC 32</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Data Management and Interchange</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Secretariat: United States of America (ANSI)</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Administered by Pacific Northwest National Laboratory on behalf of ANSI</p>
--

DOCUMENT TYPE	Text for CD Ballot
TITLE	ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:200x, Information technology — Database languages —SQL Multimedia and Application Packages -Part 2: Full-Text
SOURCE	SC 32 Secretariat
PROJECT NUMBER	1.32.04.02.02.00
STATUS	Please return all ballots to the SC 32 Secretariat no later than 17 August 2001.
REFERENCES	
ACTION ID.	LB
REQUESTED ACTION	Please return all ballots to the SC 32 Secretariat no later than 17 August 2001.
DUE DATE	2001-08-17
Number of Pages	261
LANGUAGE USED	English
DISTRIBUTION	P & L Members SC Chair WG Conveners and Secretaries

Douglas Mann, Secretariat, ISO/IEC JTC 1/SC 32

Pacific Northwest National Laboratory *, 901 D Street, SW., Suite 900, Washington, DC, 20024-2115, United States of America

Telephone: +1 703 575 2114; Facsimile; +1 703 671 9180; E-mail: MannD@battelle.org

available from the JTC 1/SC 32 WebSite <http://www.jtc1sc32.org/>

*Pacific Northwest National Laboratory (PNL) administers the ISO/IEC JTC 1/SC 32 Secretariat on behalf of ANSI

ISO

International Organization for Standardization
Organisation Internationale de Normalisation

ISO/IEC JTC 1/SC 32/WG 4

SQL/MM

Title: (ISO/IEC Committee Draft) SQL Multimedia and Application Packages (SQL/MM)—Part 2: Full-Text

Project: 1.32.04.02.02.00

Editor: Mark Ashworth, Email: Mark.Ashworth@ACM.org

References:

- [BBN004] ISO/IEC JTC 1/SC 32/WG 4 SQL/MM:BBN-004, *(ISO Working Draft) SQL Multimedia and Application Packages (SQL/MM)—Part 2: Full-Text*, Paul Cotton (ed.), October 1997, ftp://sqlstandards.org/SC32/WG4/Meetings/BBN_1998_06_Brisbane_AUS/bbn004b.ps.
- [PER001] ISO/IEC JTC 1/SC 32/WG 4 SQL/MM:PER-001, *Minutes of Helsinki, Finland WG4 Meeting*, Paul Scarponcini with Mike Newton, October 2000, ftp://sqlstandards.org/SC32/WG4/Meetings/PER_2001_04_Sydney_AUS/per001.pdf.
- [YYJ001] ISO/IEC JTC 1/SC 32/WG 4 SQL/MM:YYJ-001, *Minutes of Sydney, Australia WG4 Meeting*, Paul Scarponcini with Mike Newton, April 2001, ftp://sqlstandards.org/SC32/WG4/Meetings/YYJ_2001_10_Victoria_CAN/yyj001.pdf.
- [PER012] ISO/IEC JTC 1/SC 32/WG 4 SQL/MM:PER-012, *Addressing PP 2-200*, Mohammad Faisal, December 2000, ftp://sqlstandards.org/SC32/WG4/Meetings/PER_2001_04_Sydney_AUS/per0012.pdf.
- [PER013] ISO/IEC JTC 1/SC 32/WG 4 SQL/MM:PER-013, *Addressing PP 2-202*, Mohammad Faisal, December 2000, ftp://sqlstandards.org/SC32/WG4/Meetings/PER_2001_04_Sydney_AUS/per0013.pdf.

1 Editorial Notes

The attached (ISO/IEC Committee Draft) SQL/MM—Part 2: Full-Text document incorporates the change proposals adopted at the Sydney, Australia meeting in April 2001.

1.1 Conventions

The following conventions are used in the base document:

- 1) Usually the base document can be produced with change bars to indicate changes between the present document and the preceding version. New (inserted) and changed material is marked with a thin vertical bar.
 - 2) Places in the current document where material from the preceding version has been deleted are marked with a bullet like the one next paragraph. The note beside the bullet indicates how many rules, subclauses, etc. have been deleted.
- Example of a deletion bullet.

**** Editor's Note ****

The base document was not produced with change bars due to technical difficulties with the revision tool in the Word processor.

1.2 Organization

In Clause 2, *Changes and Notes*, I have made a number of notes related to changes that I have made to derive this document.

In Clause 3, *Possible problems with Full-Text*, there is a list of possible problems in this base document. This list should be viewed as a sort of work item list, helping identify areas that should be resolved before the base document is ready for public review. There is a further division of genuine problems versus those problems where wordsmithing is the likely answer. The second category is not viewed as sufficiently urgent to cause the base document to fail progression in a ballot for public review. Finally, there is a section for Full-Text Opportunities which lists those items in which some interest has been expressed, but that are not felt to be sufficiently important to justify delaying the standard in their absence.

In Clause 4, *Full-Text Outstanding Requirements and Issues*, I have listed a number of outstanding requirements and issues not yet addressed in the base document. This list should be viewed as a sort of *work item list*, helping identify requirements and issues which should be resolved before the base document is ready for public review.

In Clause 5, *Possible Problems with SQL:2002*, I have listed a number of possible problems related to SQL:1999. This list should be viewed as a work item list for ISO/IEC JTC 1/SC 32/WG 4, helping identify areas which should be resolved to assist in the development of this standard.

In Clause 6, *Guidelines for writing "user-friendly" change proposals*, I have outlined some suggested guidelines that I encourage you to use when writing change proposals. Following those guidelines will markedly help improve the quality of the document.

In Clause 7, *Machine readable change proposals*, I have outlined information on how to provide copies of change proposals on diskettes or by Internet electronic mail.

1.3 Electronic availability

This paper is available electronically in the following format: PDF (.pdf). To access it using anonymous FTP protocols, connect to the following Internet URL:

ftp://sqlstandards.org/SC32/WG4/Meetings/YYJ_2001_10_Victoria_CAN

Use the following filename to get the paper:

yyj007p.pdf *PDF*

2 Changes and Notes

SQL/MM—Part 2: Full-Text Changes, Sydney, Australia, April 2001.

[YYJ001] SQL/MM:YYJ-001, *Minutes of Sydney, Australia WG4 Meeting.*

No changes from the minutes this round.

[PER012] SQL/MM:PER-012, *Addressing PP 2-200*

[PER013] SQL/MM:PER-013, *Addressing PP 2-202*

Other Changes

Possible Problems Added:

2-203 ([PER-001] (Action item 16.2)

2-204 ([PER-045]

Possible Problems Added:

2-201, 2-202

Email Changes:

[sqlmm 1046] Part 6: bad grammar in Index section, Hugh Darwen, April 27, 2001

This minor editor applies to this part as well.

3 Possible Problems with Full-Text

Some possible problems have been observed with Full-Text as defined in this document. These are noted below. Further contributions to this list are welcome. Deletions from this list (resulting from change proposals that correct the problems or from research indicating that the problems do not in fact, exist) are even more welcome. Other comments may appear in the same list.

Because of the expected dynamic nature of this list (problems being removed because they are solved, new problems being added), it will become rather confusing to have the problem numbers automatically assigned by a document processing facility. In order to reduce this confusion, I have instead assigned fixed numbers to each possible problem. These numbers will not change from printing to printing, but will instead develop gaps between numbers as problems are solved.

3.1 Editor's Notes in the Base Document

In the body of the base document, I have occasionally highlighted a point that requires urgent attention thus:

Editor's Note 2-999
Text of the problem.

3.2 Possible Problems

3.2.1 Possible Problems in the Working Draft

2-201 The following Possible Problem has been noted:

Severity: Minor Technical
 Reference: P02.06.14.05 GetPreferredTerms Function
 Note at: Warwick, UK.
 Source: Editor
 Possible Problem:

Description Rule 5) begins "Otherwise, ..." when not in a conditional like if or case.

Proposed Solution:

None provided with comment.

2-203 The following Possible Problem has been noted:

Severity: Major Technical
 Reference: P02.12, Conformance
 Note at: HEL_2000_10_Helsinki_FIN
 Source: SQL/MM:PER-001 (Action Item 16.2)
 Possible Problem:

PER-026 removed the list of SQL Features required for any given part of SQL/MM to be conformant. Each part of SQL/MM needs to identify any SQL Features beyond Core that are required.

Proposed Solution:

None provided with comment.

2-204 The following Possible Problem has been noted:

Severity: Major Technical

Reference: P02-No specific location

Note at: PER_2001_04_Sydney_AUS

Source: SQL/MM:PER-045

Possible Problem:

In the SQL/MM Part 6: Data Mining editing meeting we identified a possible problem in some of the rules where the result of an Invocation is an exception. This problem occurs throughout SQL/MM-Part 2: Full-Text. In the following example, Case a) indicates one possible result of the invocation of *Contains(CHARACTER VARYING)* or *Contains(FT_Pattern)* being an exception.

- 1) The result of the invocation *Contains(CHARACTER VARYING)* or *Contains(FT_Pattern)* is determined as follows:

Case:

- a) If the value of *pattern* does not have the format of a <search expression>, then an exception condition is raised: *SQL/MM Full-Text exception – invalid search expression*.

- b) ...

Proposed Solution:

None provided with comment.

3.2.2 Possible Problems closed in this document

Closed by [PER012]

2-200 The following Possible Problem has closed:

Severity: Major Technical
 Reference: P02.06.10.04 ST_Fuzzy Function
 Note at: Warwick, UK.
 Source: Editor
 Possible Problem:

FT_Fuzzy specifies a function to return a specified FT_Fuzzy value. Other structured search pattern types in this series use CONSTRUCTOR METHODS (For example: see FT_Soundex).

Proposed Solution:

None provided with comment.

Closed by [PER013]

2-202 The following Possible Problem has closed:

Severity: Major Editorial
 Reference: P02.05.01.01 FullText Type
 Note at: Warwick, UK.
 Source: Editor
 Possible Problem:

The notation "[NOT]" is not valid in SQL and it is the first time used in any SQL/MM Part. Either a notational description for this usage or use existing mechanism with definitional rules.

Proposed Solution:

Use Definitional Rule to replace new notation:

- 1) Replace the two occurrences of "[NOT] DETERMINISTIC" with "*FT_RankDeterministicCharacteristic*"
- 2) Add new Definitional Rule:

n+1) *FT_RankDeterministicCharacteristic* is either "NOT DETERMINISTIC" or "DETERMINISTIC".
- 3) Add *FT_RankDeterministicCharacteristic* to Annex A.1, "Implementation-defined Meta-variables"

3.2.3 Possible Problems closed since the publication of ISO/IEC 13249-2:2000(E)

None at this time.

3.2.4 Possible Problems archived in later progression material

The Possible Problems in the later progression material are archived in [BBN004].

3.3 Wordsmithing Candidates

3.3.1 Wordsmithing Candidates in the Working Draft

None at this time.

More to be supplied as required.

3.3.2 Wordsmithing Candidates closed in this document

None at this time.

3.3.3 Wordsmithing Candidates closed since the publication of ISO/IEC 13249-2:2000(E)

None at this time.

3.3.4 Wordsmithing Candidates archived in later progression material

The Wordsmithing Candidates in the later progression material are archived in [BBN004].

3.4 Full-Text Opportunities

3.4.1 Full-Text Opportunities in Working Draft

None at this time.

More to be supplied as required.

3.4.2 Full-Text Opportunities closed in this document

None at this time.

More to be supplied as required.

3.4.3 Full-Text Opportunities closed since the publication of ISO/IEC 13249-2:2000(E)

None at this time.

3.4.4 Full-Text Opportunities archived in later progression material

The Full-Text Opportunities in the later progression material are archived in [BBN004].

4 Full-Text Outstanding Requirement and Issues

Several outstanding Full-Text requirements and issues have been identified. These are noted below. Further contributions to this list are welcome. Deletions from this list (resulting from change proposals which correct the issues or from research indicating that the issues do not in fact, exist) are even more welcome. Other comments may appear in the same list.

Because of the expected dynamic nature of this list (issues being removed because they are solved, new problems being added), it will become rather confusing to have the problem numbers automatically assigned by a document processing facility. In order to reduce this confusion, I have instead assigned fixed numbers to each possible problem. These numbers will not change from printing to printing, but will instead develop gaps between numbers as problems are solved.

4.1 SQL/MM Issues in Working Draft

None at this time.

More to be supplied as required.

4.2 SQL/MM Issues closed in this document

None at this time.

4.3 SQL/MM Issues closed since the publication of ISO/IEC 13249-2:2000(E)

None at this time.

4.4 SQL/MM Issues archived in later progression material

The SQL/MM Issues in the later progression material are archived in [BBN004].

5 Possible Problems with SQL-2002

I observe some possible problems with SQL-2002. These are noted below. Further contributions to this list are welcome. Deletions from this list (resulting from ISO/IEC JTC 1/SC 32/WG 4 Change proposals which correct the problems or from research indicating that the problems do not in fact, exist) are even more welcome. Other comments may appear in the same list.

Because of the expected dynamic nature of this list (problems being removed because they are solved, new problems being added), it will become rather confusing to have the problem numbers automatically assigned by a document processing facility. In order to reduce this confusion, I have instead assigned fixed numbers to each possible problem. These numbers will not change from printing to printing, but will instead develop gaps between numbers as problems are solved.

5.1 SQL-2002 Issues in the Working Draft

None at this time.

More to be supplied as required.

5.2 SQL-2002 Issues closed in this document

None at this time.

5.3 SQL Issues closed since the publication of ISO/IEC 13249-2:2000(E)

None at this time.

5.4 SQL Issues archived in later progression material

The SQL Issues in the later progression material are archived in [BBN004].

6 Guidelines for writing "user-friendly" change proposals

****Editor's Note****

Most of the following items have been adapted from the SQL Editor's notes. I wish to thank the SQL Editor for permitting me to use this information.

This chapter of the Editor's Notes offers some guidelines for writing change proposals.

****Editor's Note****

I reserve the right to decline instructions to change the document when those instructions are not complete and that do not generally follow these guidelines. Specifically, if a change proposal is accepted that fails to cite the number and title of the document being changed by the proposal, the proper Clause and/or Subclause numbers and titles affected by the proposal, and the Rule numbers and partial text of Rules that are changed by the proposal, then I will not make any changes in the next edition of the base document, but will bring the paper back to the Committee for revision and completion.

Finally, I request that anyone writing a change proposal with more than two pages (not sheets!) of actual change proposal bring to the meeting where the proposal will be considered a DOS-format floppy diskette containing the plain-text of the proposal (not in any word-processor format, but in plain-text format) to give to me. Alternatively, you can email the plain-text to me before or during the meeting. Thanks!

6.1 Writing change proposals

Here I offer some suggestions that will make the job of writing change proposals slightly more difficult and time-consuming, because they will require that the writers pay attention to what they are writing and to some conventions that we use in the document we are changing. However, experience has thoroughly demonstrated that following these suggestions leads to easier reading of change proposals (which all of your fellow committee members must do), easier editing of those proposals into the document, and a more accurate and higher quality document.

6.1.1 References

When referencing other change proposals, working papers, base documents, discussion papers, etc., always reference the ISO/IEC paper numbers whenever possible. Also, please do not reference any papers that were not distributed to ISO/IEC - alternatively, ensure that such papers are all distributed to ISO/IEC.

Always cite explicitly which base document you used as the basis for your change proposals!

6.1.2 Discussion

It is helpful to the reader if the discussion part makes quite clear why the proposal is being made. It also helps if any approaches that were considered and rejected are also mentioned, together with the reasons for their rejection.

Proposal writers should strive to describe all changes and their implications in the discussion part. Readers should have to slog through the detailed language changes to understand the consequences of the change.

6.1.3 Change proposals

- A) Every separate item of the proposal should be numbered.
- B) When referring to a Subclause of the document, always specify both Subclause number and the name of the Subclause (For example, Subclause 6.1, "ST_Point Type and Routines").

- C) When inserting, deleting, or replacing text of Rules in the document, please quote enough relevant text to unambiguously identify the specific paragraph, sentence, or Rule that you are affecting. For example, if you want to replace Syntax Rule 11)c)iv)2)B) of some Subclause, it would help if you ensure that I am able to correctly identify not only B), but also 11), 11)c), 11)c)iv) and 11)c)iv)2). In some cases, several rules may start off very similarly; to aid me in making your change to the proper Rule, you might say something like "Replace Syntax Rule 11)c)iv)2)B) (the Rule that deals with the xyz in the rst) with ". . .".
- D) Where only a few words of existing text are to be changed, it is clearer both to the reviewer and the Editor to flag differences in some way, e.g., by ~~striking out deleted text~~ and underlining new text, **setting new text in boldface**. Whatever convention is used should be explained.
- E) If you are modifying existing text by deleting a few words or adding a few words, it is often least ambiguous for you to quote the new text of the entire Rule or paragraph. However, particularly when the text is lengthy, it is difficult for me to discover readily which text remains the same and which is deleted or inserted or replaced. In this case, if you can somehow "flag" the next text or place where text has been deleted, it will be helpful to me (as well as to other readers of your papers). For example, you might underline new or replaced text and put bars through deleted text. In any case, please explain the convention that you use, because not all of us will have the same conventions in our papers.
- F) In order to make the document as consistent in its typographical style as possible, please follow these suggestions:
- 1) Most "symbolic names" are in upper-case (capital) italic letters (without diacriticals or other marks) and digits. Examples: *T*, *C1*, and *SLCC*.
 - 2) In general, only SQL <key word>s should appear in upper-case roman letters.
 - 3) A very few symbolic names - those used as "indexes" or subscripts, usually - are in lower case (small) *italic* letters and digits. Examples: "the *i*-column", "*C-k*", or "at least *j* values".
 - 4) When referring to a Boolean value the values are printed as capitalized italic words that are underlined: *True*, *False*, and *Unknown*. The words "true", "false" and "unknown" are used in their normal sense.
 - 5) No parts of the text are **bolded**.
- In particular, please do not use any symbols that have a "prime" on them. For example, even in roman upper-case letters (e.g. T'), the appearance is unclear - a third-generation photocopy is quite difficult to read. If you use primes on italic upper-case letters (e.g. *T'*), the letter and the prime almost merge. Instead, try to use subscripts (e.g. *T₁*) or different symbols (e.g. *T1* or *TA*).
- G) Try to use the precise BNF non-terminal that you mean in your papers.
- H) In change proposals, it's often very tempting to use "short-hand" notations (such "txn" for "transaction"). That's no problem for me in your discussions sections, of course, but it makes my editing job harder when it's in your proposal text - because I cannot just copy your proposal, but have to "translate" as I go. Please use the full, spelled-out, correct terminology in the formal proposal text.
- I) Remember the differences between Syntax and Access Rules and General Rules. The most important characteristic of this difference is that Syntax and Access Rules define the limits on *programs* that utilize standard-conforming features of SQL/MM systems (sometimes called standard-conforming programs), while General Rules specify the behavior of standard-conforming SQL/MM systems.

The difference is largely manifested by the choice of words - Syntax and Access Rules typically says things like "If X is specified, then Y shall be specified" or "Z and W shall not both be specified" (the emphasis here is the use of "shall" to specify requirements on users of the standard), while General Rules typically describe behavior of the SQL/MM system with word like "If X is not true, then an exception is raised: *some exception*" or "A table descriptor is created that specifies ..." (the emphasis here is the use of word like "is" to characterize the behavior of the system). Please don't write General Rules like "If X is specified, then Y shall be true. Otherwise, an exception ..." because that is a confusing mixture of Syntax and General Rule wording. Instead, say "If X is specified and Y is not true, then an exception ...".

- J) On the subject of exceptions and such, please recall that we have finally adopted consistent wording for the behavior with regards to the end-of-statement behavior. The two categories are: "... an exception condition is raised: *some condition*" and "... a completion condition is raised: *limited alternatives*". The only acceptable alternatives for the completion conditions are *successful completion*, *warning* (with either *no subcode* or a specific subcode), and *no data*. Furthermore, recall that the typographical convention is that the exception class and subclass phrases are separated by a dash (-) and are always both in italics.
- K) A few naming conventions are also good to remember: "data type" is two words, "database" is one word, and "datetime" is also one word. Furthermore "text in quotes" is not a BNF non-terminal but "<text in angle brackets>" is.
- L) We should also try to consistently choose certain phraseology to refer to the various data types. For example, the SQL standard uses "character string type", "character data type", "<character string type>", "data type CHARACTER", and several other phrases to describe what is probably the same thing. In general, unless you *really* mean the specific <key word> CHARACTER, you should probably choose "character string type". An analogous guideline applies to the other <data type>s, of course - which highlights another issue: consistency in the use of "data type" vs. "<data type>". I recommend the less formal "data type" unless you really mean the BNF non terminal "<data type>", which is probably appropriate only when discussing the syntax.

6.1.4 Use of Notes

Change proposals often must draw the (proposal) reader's attention to some detail or explanation. This is best done by means of a note starting off with "**Note to proposal reader:**".

Similarly, change proposal sometimes need to call the Editor's attention to some detail, such as the need to assign an SQLSTATE class code or subclass code to a condition. This is best done by means of a note starting off with "**Note to the Editor:**".

However, there is also the need for change proposals to insert notes into the text of the document that they modify, so that the reader of the resulting standard has access to the note text. This is best done by specifying something like "NOTE nnn: text of the note".

6.1.5 Check list

All changes to the document must be specified explicitly. It is unfair to the Editor to expect him to make changes left implicit or unspecified.

The following list of clauses and annex the need review is provided in the hope of reducing the number of incomplete change proposals:

- Conformance Clause,
- Status Codes Clause,
- Annex A, "Implementation-defined elements",
- Annex B, "Implementation-dependent elements",

A proposal that solves a Possible Problem, Wordsmithing or Full-Text Opportunity, whether intentionally or not, should say so prominently, so that the Editor's Notes may be kept up-to-date.

A proposal that introduces a Possible Problem, for example because it is admittedly incomplete should specify an appropriate addition to the Possible Problems list. The same applies to language opportunities.

6.1.5.1 A Checklist of Issues to be Addressed by Change Proposals

- 1) **Concepts** — If a proposal introduces new concepts into the SQL/MM or substantially modifies support for existing concepts, then Clause 4, "Concepts" must be updated to reflect the new reality.
- 2) **Static methods** — For new or modified user-defined types, define appropriate static methods.
- 3) **Constructor methods** — For new or modified user-defined instantiable types, define appropriate SQL-invoked constructor methods to be used with the NEW operator.
- 4) **Cast definitions** — For new or modified user-defined types, define appropriate cast definitions (CREATE CAST).
- 5) **Ordering definitions** — For new or modified user-defined types, define appropriate cast definitions (CREATE ORDERING).
- 6) **SQL Transforms definitions** — For new or modified user-defined types, define appropriate cast definitions (CREATE TRANSFORM).
- 7) **Conformance Clause** — Every new type and routine, however small, must be dealt with in the Conformance Clause.
- 8) **New Status Codes** — Whenever any new exception condition or completion condition is used in the document, it must be accompanied by a specification to include it in the SQLSTATE value tables.
- 9) **Closing Possible Problems** — Many proposals resolve previously-discovered problems in the Full-Text document or fulfill a previously-stated desire for a new feature. Proposals must state whether their acceptance can result in closing existing Possible Problems or Language Opportunities.
- 10) **Any new Possible Problems** — If a proposal identifies, but does not solve, a previously-unidentified (or unrecorded) problem, it must clearly instruct the Editor to enter a new Possible Problem.
- 11) **18-Character identifiers** — All identifiers in the Full-Text Document must use 18-Character identifiers so this standard can be implemented on conforming SQL implementations without Feature F391, "Long identifiers".
- 12) **Full data type names for basetypes** — Full data type names for base types must be used. . i.e. CHARACTER instead of CHAR, INTEGER instead of INT, DECIMAL instead of DEC, CHARACTER VARYING instead of VARCHAR, NATIONAL CHARACTER instead of NCHAR, CHARACTER LARGE OBJECT instead of CLOB, and BINARY LARGE OBJECT instead of BLOB.
- 13) **Implementation-defined elements** — Every new specification of some aspect of SQL/MM as implementation-defined must be accompanied by a corresponding entry in the appropriate Annex.
- 14) **Implementation-defined Meta-variables** — Every new specification of some aspect of SQL/MM as implementation-defined meta-variable must be accompanied by a corresponding entry in the appropriate Annex.
- 15) **Implementation-dependent elements** — Every new specification of some aspect of SQL/MM as implementation-dependent must be accompanied by a corresponding entry in the appropriate Annex.

More to be supplied as required.

6.1.5.2 Format for Possible Problems and Full-Text Opportunities

All Possible Problems and Full-Text Opportunities should be provide, preferably in electronic, machine-readable form, to the Editor using the following format:

Severity: One of Major Technical, Minor Technical, and Major Editorial.

Reference: A specific document and either Clause or Subclause, identified by both number and name.

- The document number should be of the form "Pnn", where "nn" represents the part number, including leading zeros to make it a 2-digit number. For example, P02 would be used for SQL/MM—Part 2: Full-Text. Terminate this with a period to separate it from the Clause or Subclause number.
- The Clause or Subclause number should have two digits per level (including leading zeros) such as "03: or "04.21.01".
- The name should be spelled *exactly* as it is currently specified in the base documents, but *not* enclosed in quotation marks. You should not use a comma between the number and the name.
- The word Clause or Subclause should not be used in this item.
- If the PP or LO doesn't apply to a specific Clause or Subclause in the document, then use the phrase "No specific location".

Examples of properly formatted references are:

- P02.No specific location
- P05.04.06.01 Classes of SQL-statements

Note at: A specific location within an identified Clause or Subclause. This would identify the paragraph, Purpose, Definition, Definitional Rule, or Description at which the Editor should put a note referencing the Possible Problem or Full-Text Opportunity. If the PP or SO does not apply to such a specific place, then the word "None" should be specified here.

Source: The name of the person or the paper number that proposed the PP or SO, as well as the date on which it was submitted.

Possible Problem: or Full-Text Opportunity: This is the actual text of the PP or SO (use only one of those two phrases, of course!), taking as many paragraphs as you need.

Proposed Solution: This is the actual text of a proposed solution. If none is proposed, then "None submitted with comment" should be specified.

6.1.6 The End Of The Paper

Not everybody's printers and computers work perfectly every time. It sometimes happens that an attempt to print a change proposal or other paper terminates prematurely, but it is not always obvious to the reader that the paper is not completely printed. There are ways to combat this. It is very strongly suggested that you end your change proposals (and, indeed, even discussion papers) with some notation like:

```
=====  
End of paper.  
=====
```

Alternatively, you could choose to number each page with the formula "Page n of m", where "m" is the total number of pages. This approach has the disadvantage that many word processors happily print an incorrect value for "m". If you choose this approach, you will have to be extremely careful that the value is correct. Perhaps you could combine this approach with the previous suggestion for maximum benefit.

7 Machine readable change proposals

I would like to thank the ISO participants who have provided me with copies of their change proposals on the archive:

ftp://sqlstandards.org/SC32/WG4/Meetings/AAA_YYYY_MM_Place_Country

where:

AAA is the three letter meeting location (airport) code,
YYYY_MM is the year and month of the meeting, and
Place_Country identifies the meeting location.

This practice reduces the editorial workload considerably and makes it much easier to ensure accurate incorporation of the change proposals in the base document. I continue to urge those participants to supply copies of their proposals on the archive. The detailed procedures for posting change proposals are set out in ISO/IEC JTC 1/SC 32/N 00149, *Proposed Guidelines for the Production, Distribution, and Storage of SC32 Documents*.

Alternately, if you are unable to post the change proposal to the archive, then I urge you to bring an electronic form of the proposal on a diskette to the meeting. I will of course either return the diskettes or replace them with blank diskettes on request. I prefer clearly labeled, DOS formatted, 3.5 inch HD diskettes (Double Sided, High Density, 80 Tracks, 135TPI). The preferred file formats are Microsoft Word for Windows 1997 and clear text.

Another alternative may be for you to E-mail your change proposal to my Internet E-mail address:

Mark.Ashworth@ACM.org

Good luck...

INTERNATIONAL
STANDARD

ISO/IEC
13249-2

Committee Draft

Second edition
2002-??-??

**Information technology — Database
languages — SQL Multimedia and
Application Packages —**

**Part 2:
Full-Text**

*Technologies de l'information – Langues de bases de données –
Multimédia SQL et paquetages d'application –*

Partie 2: Texte complet

Document type: International Standard
Document subtype: Not applicable
Document stage: **(30) Committee**
Document language: E



Reference Number
ISO/IEC 13249-2:2002(E)

PDF disclaimer

This PDF file may contain embedded typefaces. In accordance with Adobe's licensing policy, this file may be printed or viewed but shall not be edited unless the typefaces which are embedded are licensed to and installed on the computer performing the editing. In downloading this file, parties accept therein the responsibility of not infringing Adobe's licensing policy. The ISO Central Secretariat accepts no liability in this area.

Adobe is a trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Details of the software products used to create this PDF file can be found in the General Info relative to this file; the PDF-creation parameters were optimized for printing. Every care has been taken to ensure that the file is suitable for use by ISO member bodies. In the unlikely event that a problem relating to it is found, please inform the Central Secretariat at the address given below.

© ISO/IEC

All rights reserved. Unless otherwise specified, no part of this publication may be reproduced or utilized in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and microfilm, without permission in writing from either ISO at the address below or ISO's member body in the country of the requester.

ISO copyright office
Case postale 56 • CH-1211 Geneva 20 • Switzerland
Tel. + 41 22 749 01 11
Fax +41 22 734 10 79
E-mail copyright@iso.ch
Web www.iso.ch

Contents	Page
Foreword	vii
Introduction.....	viii
1 Scope	1
2 Normative references	3
2.1 International standards	3
2.2 Publicly available standards	3
3 Definitions, notations, and conventions	5
3.1 Definitions	5
3.1.1 Definitions provided in Part 1	5
3.1.2 Definitions provided in Part 2	5
3.1.3 Definitions taken from ISO/IEC 9075	6
3.1.4 Definitions taken from ANSI/NISO Z39.19	6
3.2 Notations	6
3.3 Conventions	6
4 Concepts	7
4.1 Text model	7
4.2 Text identification facilities	8
4.2.1 Single word patterns (patterns of the form <word>)	9
4.2.2 Single phrase patterns (patterns of the form <phrase>)	9
4.2.3 Patterns representing sets of single words	9
4.2.4 Patterns formed by sets of single phrases	12
4.2.5 Patterns specifying context conditions	14
4.2.6 Patterns involving Boolean operators	16
4.2.7 Identification of FullText values which are pertinent to a given text	17
4.3 Text ranking facilities	17
4.4 Language aspects	18
4.4.1 Multilingual texts and patterns	18
4.4.2 Treatment of stop words	19
4.5 Word normalization	19
4.6 Types and routines provided by this part of ISO/IEC 13249	20
4.6.1 Types and routines intended for public use	20
4.6.2 Types and routines for definition	20
4.6.3 Technique for defining the semantics of Category 1 Contains methods	21
5 Full-Text Types	23
5.1 FullText Type and Routines	23
5.1.1 FullText Type	23
5.1.2 Contains Methods	26
5.1.3 Rank Methods	28
5.1.4 Tokenize Method	30
5.1.5 TokenizePosition Method	31
5.1.6 Segmentize Method	33
5.1.7 TokenizeAndStem Method	34
5.1.8 TokenizePositionAndStem Method	35
5.1.9 FullText Methods	37
5.1.10 FullText_to_Character Function	38
5.1.11 StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Function	39
5.2 FT_TokenPosition Type and Routines	40
5.2.1 FT_TokenPosition Type	40
5.3 FT_Pattern Type and Routines	41

5.3.1	FT_Pattern Type	41
5.3.2	FT_Pattern Key Words	57
6	Structured Search Pattern Types.....	59
6.1	FT_Any Type and Routines	60
6.1.1	FT_Any Type	60
6.1.2	Contains Method	61
6.1.3	FT_Any Method.....	63
6.2	FT_Primary Type and Routines.....	64
6.2.1	FT_Primary Type	64
6.2.2	Contains Method	65
6.2.3	StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method.....	66
6.3	FT_WordOrPhrase Type and Routines	67
6.3.1	FT_WordOrPhrase Type	67
6.3.2	Contains Method	68
6.3.3	StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method.....	69
6.3.4	getWordArray Method.....	70
6.4	FT_TextLiteral Type and Routines.....	71
6.4.1	FT_TextLiteral Type.....	71
6.4.2	Contains Method	73
6.4.3	StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method.....	75
6.4.4	matches Method	76
6.4.5	Tokenize Method	77
6.4.6	getWordArray Method.....	78
6.4.7	FT_TextLiteral Methods	79
6.4.8	EliminateDQS Function.....	80
6.4.9	InsertDQS Function.....	81
6.5	FT_StemmedWord Type and Routines	82
6.5.1	FT_StemmedWord Type	82
6.5.2	Contains Method	84
6.5.3	StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method.....	86
6.5.4	TokenizeAndStem Method.....	87
6.5.5	FT_StemmedWord Methods.....	88
6.6	FT_Phrase Type and Routines	89
6.6.1	FT_Phrase Type.....	89
6.6.2	Contains Method	91
6.6.3	StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method.....	94
6.6.4	getWordArray Method.....	95
6.6.5	TokenizePosition Method	96
6.6.6	FT_Phrase Methods	97
6.6.7	matches Function.....	99
6.6.8	prune Function	101
6.7	FT_StemmedPhrase Type and Routines.....	102
6.7.1	FT_StemmedPhrase Type.....	102
6.7.2	Contains Method	104
6.7.3	StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method.....	108
6.7.4	TokenizePositionAndStem Method	109
6.7.5	FT_StemmedPhrase Methods	110
6.8	FT_Proxi Type and Routines.....	112
6.8.1	FT_Proxi Type.....	112
6.8.2	Contains Method	114
6.8.3	StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method.....	117
6.8.4	FT_Proxi Method	118
6.9	FT_Soundex Type and Routines.....	119
6.9.1	FT_Soundex Type.....	119
6.9.2	Contains Method	120
6.9.3	StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method.....	121
6.9.4	FT_Soundex Method	122
6.9.5	GetSoundsSimilar Function	123

6.10	FT_Fuzzy Type and Routines	124
6.10.1	FT_Fuzzy Type	124
6.10.2	Contains Method	125
6.10.3	StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method	126
6.10.4	FT_Fuzzy Method	127
6.10.5	GetSpelledSimilar Function	128
6.11	FT_BroaderTerm Type and Routines	129
6.11.1	FT_BroaderTerm Type	129
6.11.2	Contains Method	131
6.11.3	StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method	132
6.11.4	FT_BroaderTerm Method	133
6.11.5	GetBroaderTerms Function	134
6.12	FT_NarrowerTerm Type and Routines	137
6.12.1	FT_NarrowerTerm Type	137
6.12.2	Contains Method	139
6.12.3	StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method	140
6.12.4	FT_NarrowerTerm Method	141
6.12.5	GetNarrowerTerms Function	142
6.13	FT_Synonym Type and Routines	145
6.13.1	FT_Synonym Type	145
6.13.2	Contains Method	147
6.13.3	StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method	148
6.13.4	FT_Synonym Method	149
6.13.5	GetSynonymTerms Function	150
6.14	FT_PREFERREDTERM Type and Routines	152
6.14.1	FT_PREFERREDTERM Type	152
6.14.2	Contains Method	154
6.14.3	StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method	155
6.14.4	FT_PREFERREDTERM Method	156
6.14.5	GetPreferredTerms Function	157
6.15	FT_RelatedTerm Type and Routines	159
6.15.1	FT_RelatedTerm Type	159
6.15.2	Contains Method	161
6.15.3	StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method	162
6.15.4	FT_RelatedTerm Method	163
6.15.5	GetRelatedTerms Function	164
6.16	FT_TopTerm Type and Routines	166
6.16.1	FT_TopTerm Type	166
6.16.2	Contains Method	168
6.16.3	StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method	169
6.16.4	FT_TopTerm Method	170
6.16.5	GetTopTerms Function	171
6.17	FT_IsAbout Type and Routines	173
6.17.1	FT_IsAbout Type	173
6.17.2	Contains Method	174
6.17.3	StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method	175
6.17.4	FT_IsAbout Method	176
6.18	FT_Context Type and Routines	177
6.18.1	FT_Context Type	177
6.18.2	Contains Method	178
6.18.3	StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method	181
6.18.4	FT_Context Method	183
6.19	FT_ParExpr Type and Routines	184
6.19.1	FT_ParExpr Type	184
6.19.2	Contains Method	185
6.19.3	StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method	186
6.19.4	FT_ParExpr Method	187
6.20	FT_Term Type and Routines	188

6.20.1	FT_Term Type	188
6.20.2	Contains Method	189
6.20.3	StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method	190
6.20.4	FT_Term Method	191
6.21	FT_Expr Type and Routines	192
6.21.1	FT_Expr Type	192
6.21.2	Contains Method	193
6.21.3	StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method	194
6.21.4	FT_Expr Method	195
6.22	FT_PhraseList Type and Routines	196
6.22.1	FT_PhraseList Type	196
6.22.2	Contains Method	197
6.22.3	StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method	199
6.22.4	FT_PhraseList Method	200
7	FullText_Token Type and Routines	202
7.1	FullText_Token Type	202
8	SQL/MM Full-Text Thesaurus Schema	204
8.1	Introduction	204
8.2	FT_THESAURUS Schema	205
8.3	TERM_DICTIONARY base table	206
8.4	TERM_HIERARCHY base table	207
8.5	TERM_SYNONYM base table	208
8.6	TERM_RELATED base table	209
9	SQL/MM Full-Text Information Schema	210
9.1	Introduction	210
9.2	FT_FEATURES view	211
9.3	FT_Schemata view	211
10	SQL/MM Full-Text Definition Schema	212
10.1	Introduction	212
10.2	FT_FEATURES base table	213
10.3	FT_SCHEMATA base table	216
11	Status Codes	218
12	Conformance	220
12.1	Requirements for conformance	220
12.2	Claims of conformance	220
Annex A	222
A.1	Implementation-defined Meta-variables	227
Annex B	228
B.1	Implementation-dependent Meta-variables	228
Index	230

Tables	Page
Table 1 — SQLSTATE class and subclass values	218

Foreword

ISO (the International Organization for Standardization) and IEC (the International Electrotechnical Commission) form the specialized system for worldwide standardization. National bodies that are members of ISO or IEC participate in the development of International Standards through technical committees established by the respective organization to deal with particular fields of mutual interest. Other international organizations, governmental and non-governmental, in liaison with ISO and IEC, also take part in the work.

International Standards are drafted in accordance with the rules given in the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 3.

In the field of information technology, ISO and IEC have established a joint technical committee, ISO/IEC JTC 1. Draft International Standards adopted by the joint technical committee are circulated to national bodies for voting. Publication as an International Standard requires approval by at least 75 % of the national bodies casting a vote.

Attention is drawn to the possibility that some elements of this part of ISO/IEC 13249 may be the subject of patent rights. ISO and IEC shall not be held responsible for identifying any or all such patent rights.

International Standard ISO/IEC 13249-2 was prepared by Joint Technical Committee ISO/IEC JTC 1, *Information Technology*, Subcommittee SC32, *Data Management and interchange*.

ISO/IEC 13249 consists of the following parts, under the general title *Information technology — Database languages — SQL Multimedia and Application Packages*:

- *Part 1: Framework*
- *Part 2: Full-Text*
- *Part 3: Spatial*
- *Part 5: Still Image*
- *Part 6: Data Mining*

Annexes A and B of this part of ISO/IEC 13249 are for information only.

Introduction

The purpose of this International Standard is to define multimedia and application specific types and their associated routines using the user-defined features in ISO/IEC 9075.

This document is based on the content of ISO/IEC International Standard Database Language (SQL).

The organization of this part of ISO/IEC 13249 is as follows:

- 1) Clause 1, "Scope", specifies the scope of this part of ISO/IEC 13249.
- 2) Clause 2, "Normative references", identifies additional standards that, through reference in this part of ISO/IEC 13249, constitute provisions of this part of ISO/IEC 13249.
- 3) Clause 3, "Definitions, notations, and conventions", defines the notations and conventions used in this part of ISO/IEC 13249.
- 4) Clause 4, "Concepts", presents concepts used in the definition of this part of ISO/IEC 13249.
- 5) Clause 5, "Full-Text Types", defines the full-text user-defined types and associated routines.
- 6) Clause 6, "Structured Search Pattern Types", defines a family of user-defined types to provide for the construction of structured search patterns.
- 7) Clause 7, "FullText_Token Type and Routines", defines the user-defined FullText_Token type.
- 8) Clause 8, "SQL/MM Full-Text Thesaurus Schema", defines the SQL/MM Full-Text thesaurus schema used to define the thesaurus related routines.
- 9) Clause 9, "SQL/MM Full-Text Information Schema", defines the SQL/MM Full-Text Information Schema.
- 10) Clause 10, "SQL/MM Full-Text Definition Schema", defines the SQL/MM Full-Text Definition Schema.
- 11) Clause 11, "Status Codes", defines the SQLSTATE codes used in this part of ISO/IEC 13249.
- 12) Clause 12, "Conformance", defines the criteria for conformance to this part of ISO/IEC 13249.
- 13) Annex A, "Implementation-defined elements", is an informative Annex. It lists those features for which the body of this part of ISO/IEC 13249 states that the syntax or meaning or effect on the database is partly or wholly implementation-defined, and describes the defining information that an implementor shall provide in each case.
- 14) Annex B, "Implementation-dependent elements", is an informative Annex. It lists those features which the body of this part of ISO/IEC 13249 states explicitly that the syntax or meaning or effect on the database is implementation-dependent.

In the text of this part of ISO/IEC 13249, Clauses begin a new odd-numbered page, and in Clause 5, "Full-Text Types", through Clause 12, "Conformance", Subclauses begin a new page. Any resulting blank space is not significant.

**Information Technology — Database Languages —
SQL Multimedia and Application Packages — SQL/MM
Part 2: Full-Text**

1 Scope

This part of ISO SQL/MM:

- a) introduces the Full-Text part of ISO/IEC 13249,
- b) gives the references necessary for this part of ISO/IEC 13249,
- c) defines notations and conventions specific to this part of ISO/IEC 13249,
- d) defines concepts specific to this part of ISO/IEC 13249,
- e) defines the full-text user-defined types and their associated routines.

Blank page

2 Normative references

The following standards and publicly available specifications contain provisions that, through reference in this text, constitute provisions of this part of ISO/IEC 13249. For dated references, subsequent amendments to, or revisions of, any of these publications do not apply. However, parties to agreements based on this part of ISO/IEC 13249 are encouraged to investigate the possibility of applying the most recent editions of the normative documents indicated below. For undated references, the latest edition of the normative document referred to applies. Members of IEC and ISO maintain registers of currently valid International Standards.

2.1 International standards

ISO/IEC 9075-1:1999, *Information technology — Database languages — SQL — Part 1: Framework (SQL/Framework)*.

ISO/IEC 9075-2:1999, *Information technology — Database languages — SQL — Part 2: Foundation (SQL/Foundation)*.

ISO/IEC 9075-4:1999, *Information technology — Database languages — SQL — Part 4: Persistent Stored Modules (SQL/PSM)*.

ISO/IEC 13249-1:2000, *Information technology — Database languages — SQL Multimedia and Application Packages — Part 1: Framework*.

2.2 Publicly available standards

ANSI/NISO Z39.19-1993, American National Standard for Information Systems/National Information Standards Organization, *Guidelines for the Construction, Format, and Management of Monolingual Thesauri*.

Blank page

3 Definitions, notations, and conventions

3.1 Definitions

For the purpose of this part of ISO/IEC 13249, the following definitions apply.

3.1.1 Definitions provided in Part 1

This part of ISO/IEC 13249 makes use of all terms defined ISO/IEC 13249-1.

3.1.2 Definitions provided in Part 2

3.1.2.1

broader term

A superordinate term in a hierarchical relation (e.g. a broader term for "SQL" is "Database Language")

3.1.2.2

coordinate relation

A formal relation juxtaposing terms or classes of terms

3.1.2.3

fuzzy term

A term having a different form though its spelling is similar to another term (e.g. a fuzzy term for "voila" is "viola")

3.1.2.4

hierarchical relation

A formal relation between two terms or classes in which one term is subordinate to the other term

3.1.2.5

narrower term

A subordinate term in a hierarchical relation (e.g. a narrower term for "SQL" is "SQL/MM")

3.1.2.6

preferred term

A term chosen as a descriptor from a set of equivalent terms (e.g. a preferred term for "Structured Query Language" is "SQL")

3.1.2.7

related term

A term connected to another term by a coordinate relation (e.g. a related term for "SQL" is "DB2")

3.1.2.8

soundex term

A term having a different form though its pronunciation is similar to another term. (e.g. a soundex term for "there" is "their")

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)

3.2 Notations

3.1.2.9

synonym term

A term having a different form but a similar meaning to another term (e.g. a synonym term for "SQL/MM" is "SQL Multimedia and Application Packages")

3.1.2.10

top term

The broadest term in a hierarchical relation. If it is defined that "Computer Language" is a broader term of "Database Language, then the top term of "SQL" is "Computer Language"

3.1.3 Definitions taken from ISO/IEC 9075

This part of ISO/IEC 13249 makes use of the following terms defined in ISO/IEC 9075:

3.1.3.1

contain

3.1.3.2

immediately contain

3.1.3.3

simply contain

3.1.3.4

SQL-invoked routine

3.1.4 Definitions taken from ANSI/NISO Z39.19

This part of ISO/IEC 13249 makes use of the following terms defined in ANSI/NISO Z39.19:

3.1.4.1

thesaurus

3.2 Notations

The notations used in this part of ISO/IEC 13249 are defined in ISO/IEC 13249-1.

3.3 Conventions

The conventions used in this part of ISO/IEC 13249 are defined in ISO/IEC 13249-1.

4 Concepts

4.1 Text model

Text as modeled by the types and routines of this part of ISO/IEC 13249 is any sequence of characters which represents one of the following:

- a single word,
- a sequence of words,
- a single sentence,
- a sequence of sentences,
- a single paragraph,
- a sequence of paragraphs.

A sentence consists of one or more words. A paragraph consists of one or more sentences.

When modeled as a value of the *FullText* type of this part of ISO/IEC 13249 a text value is associated with a specific language. The recognition of word, sentence and paragraph boundaries is largely governed by language specific rules, conventions, and heuristics. It is implementation-defined which of these rules, conventions, and heuristics are applied by a given implementation.

4.2 Text identification facilities

For identifying specific *FullText* values in collections of *FullText* values this part of ISO/IEC 13249 provides facilities for testing whether a text represented by a given *FullText* value matches a certain pattern (i.e. whether that pattern occurs in that text).

Like text, patterns are sequences of characters, representing one of the following:

- a single word (patterns of the form <word>),
- a set of words (patterns of the form <word> with wild card characters, patterns of the form <token list>, patterns of the form <stemmed word>, patterns of the form <expansion function invocation>, or certain patterns of the form <text literal list>),
- a phrase, i.e. a representation of a sequence of words (patterns of the form <phrase>),
- a set of phrases (patterns of the form <phrase> with wild card characters, patterns of the form <stemmed phrase>, patterns of the form <expansion function invocation>, or certain patterns of the form <text literal list>),
- a set of words and/or phrases (patterns of the form <text literal list> or patterns of the form <expansion function invocation>),
- sets of two or more patterns, each either consisting of a single word or phrase, or a set composed of context patterns (patterns of the form <Proximity expansion>, or patterns of the form <context condition>),
- patterns formed by patterns and Boolean operators for negation, conjunction, or disjunction (patterns of the form <search expression> | <search term>, patterns of the form <search term> & <search factor>, or patterns of the form NOT <search primary>).

Each word pattern and single phrase pattern is either explicitly or implicitly associated with a specific language.

To illustrate the effects of patterns the following text samples represented by values of the *FullText* type (to be referred to as *firstSample*, *secondSample*, and *thirdSample*) will be used:

firstSample:

As assumed by this International Standard, every text value is associated with a specific language. The recognition of word, sentence and paragraph boundaries is largely governed by language specific rules, conventions, and heuristics; it is implementation-defined which of these rules, conventions, and heuristics are applied by a given implementation.

secondSample:

```
The test
  firstSample.Contains(' "International" ') = 1
succeeds since the word International is contained in this text sample.
```

thirdSample:

```
die ≅ Würfel
```

4.2.1 Single word patterns (patterns of the form <word>)

Single word patterns are the most basic pattern and they consist of a sequence of characters which are for a given language admissible in words. That sequence of characters is decorated by a leading and trailing double quote character, as in the following example:

```
' "International" '
```

NOTE 1 The blank characters outside of double quote characters in the above example are not significant. They have been added simply to ensure readability of the example text.

NOTE 2 A list of <key word>s that can be used in patterns is given in Subclause 5.3.2, "FT_Pattern Key Words". Although these <key word>s are shown in upper case in subsequent examples, methods that accept arguments containing these <key word>s are invariant to the case of these <key word>s.

A text value matches a word pattern if it contains at least one word which matches that pattern. Thus, the test:

```
firstSample.Contains(' "International" ') = 1
```

succeeds since the word *International* is contained in *firstSample*.

4.2.2 Single phrase patterns (patterns of the form <phrase>)

Single phrase patterns represent a sequence of words. Each such word is represented in the same way as the word in a single word pattern. Where needed by a given language an implementation-defined word separator is used. In the following example the word separator is a blank character. Like single word patterns, single phrase patterns are decorated by a leading and trailing double quote character, as in the following example:

```
' "International Standard" '
```

A text value matches a single phrase pattern if it contains at least one sequence of words, such that, for every word in that sequence, the *i*-th word of the sequence matches the *i*-th word of the phrase pattern. Thus, the test:

```
firstSample.Contains(' "International Standard" ') = 1
```

succeeds since the word sequence *International Standard* is contained in *firstSample*.

4.2.3 Patterns representing sets of single words

Patterns representing a set of words can be specified in one of the following ways:

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)

4.2 Text identification facilities

4.2.3.1 Patterns of the form <word> with wild card characters

By using the wild card characters underscore (_) or percent (%) in any character position of a single word pattern a possibly unlimited number of single word patterns are effectively specified. For instance, in the following example:

```
' "Standard_" '
```

the underscore stands for any single character. Accordingly this pattern represents as many words (not all of them necessarily meaningful) as there are characters. When the percent wild card is used, the number of virtually represented single word patterns is infinite since this wild card character represents any sequence of characters (including the empty one). A text value matches such a pattern if it contains at least one word which matches one word out of the set of word patterns effectively represented by that pattern. Thus the test:

```
firstSample.Contains(' "Standard%" ') = 1
```

succeeds since the pattern matches the word *Standard* (note that the word *Standards* would also be matched). The test:

```
firstSample.Contains(' "Standard_" ') = 1
```

fails since there is no word in *firstSample* which starts with *Standard* and ends with some other character (such as "s").

4.2.3.2 Expansion facility patterns

Expansion facility patterns enable one to effectively generate a set composed of single word (and/or single phrase) patterns from a starting term which represents a single word such as *database* (note that a single phrase is also admissible as the starting term). Depending on the specific generation being specified the generated terms (i.e. single word or single phrase patterns) may be:

- terms which sound similar to the generating term,
- terms which are spelled similar to the generating term,
- terms which are broader terms for the generating term,
- terms which are narrower terms for the generating term,
- terms which are synonyms of the generating term,
- terms which are preferred terms for the generating term,
- terms which are related to the generating term,
- terms which are top terms of the generating term.

A text value matches such a pattern if it contains at least one word which matches the single word patterns effectively represented by that pattern. Thus if the thesaurus *computer science* has been set up in such a way that *list* and *sequence* are synonyms to each other the test:

```
firstSample.Contains(' THESAURUS "computer science"  
EXPAND SYNONYM TERM OF "list" ') = 1
```

(which uses a synonym expansion pattern) will succeed.

4.2.3.3 Enumeration of single word patterns (<token list> and certain <text literal list> patterns)

An enumeration of single word patterns consists of a comma separated list of single word patterns, as in the following example:

```
' ( "Standard", "International", "method" ) '
```

Any of the single word patterns may contain wild card characters, as in the following example:

```
' ( "Standard", "International_", "method" ) '
```

When wild card characters are used the number of words effectively represented by a pattern is larger than the number of its constituent single word patterns.

A text value matches such a <token list> pattern if it matches at least one of its constituent patterns. <token list> patterns can only be used as constituent patterns of <Proximity expansion> patterns.

4.2.3.4 Patterns representing sets of words with a common base reduced form (patterns of the form <stemmed word>)

Patterns of the form [STEMMED] FORM OF <word> are effectively treated as a set of <word> patterns, such that all elements of that set have the same base reduced form. For example:

```
STEMMED FORM OF ' "mice" '
```

will be treated as if

```
' ( "mouse" , "mice" ' )
```

had been specified.

Therefore a text value matches a <stemmed word> pattern if it matches the equivalent <token list> pattern. This condition can be rephrased as: A text value matches a <stemmed word> pattern if it contains at least one word which when replaced by its base reduced form matches the base reduced form word pattern represented by that pattern. Thus, the test:

```
firstSample.Contains('STEMMED FORM OF "Standards" ') = 1
```

succeeds since the base reduced form of *Standards* is *Standard* which in turn is contained in *firstSample*.

4.2.4 Patterns formed by sets of single phrases

Patterns representing a set of phrases can be specified in one of the following ways:

4.2.4.1 Patterns of the form <phrase> with wild card characters

Within single phrase patterns wild card characters may be used as follows:

- within every constituent word representation any wild card character may be used as in the following example:

```
' "International Standard%" '
```

Effectively a multitude of single phrase patterns is generated this way such that every possible combination of generated word representations and word representations without wild card characters (taking the proper word positions into account) are reflected by one of the resulting single phrase patterns.

- instead of a word representation a single percent (%) wild card character may be used as in the following example:

```
' "this % Standard" '
```

Used this way the wild card character represents an arbitrary optional word. Thus the above pattern effectively represents a two word phrase, i.e.:

```
' "this Standard" '
```

and an infinite number of three word phrases each having *this* and *Standard* as its first and last word, respectively.

The two styles of using wild card characters can be combined.

A text value matches a single phrase pattern with wild card characters if it matches at least one of the patterns effectively generated from that pattern. Thus the test:

```
firstSample.Contains(' "this % Standard%" ') = 1
```

succeeds since the pattern represents (among others) the word sequence *this International Standard* which is contained in *firstSample*.

4.2.4.2 Expansion facility patterns

Expansion facility patterns enable one to effectively generate a set composed of single phrase (and/or single word) patterns given a starting term which represents a phrase such as *data base* (note that a single word is also admissible as the starting term). Depending on the specific generation being specified the generated terms (i.e. single word or single phrase patterns) may be:

- terms which are broader terms for the generating term,
- terms which are narrower terms for the generating term,
- terms which are synonyms of the generating term,
- terms which are preferred terms for the generating term,
- terms which are related to the generating term,
- terms which are top terms of the generating term.

A text value matches such a pattern if it contains at least one phrase which matches one of the single phrase patterns effectively represented by that pattern. Thus, if the thesaurus *computer science* has been set up in such a way that *rule of thumb* and *heuristics* are synonyms to each other then the test:

```
firstSample.Contains(' THESAURUS "computer science"  
                     EXPAND SYNONYM TERM OF "rule of thumb" ') = 1
```

(which uses a synonym expansion pattern) will succeed.

4.2.4.3 Enumeration of single phrase patterns (certain <text literal list> patterns)

An enumeration of single phrase patterns consists of a comma separated list of single phrase patterns as in the following example:

```
' ( "this % Standard", "International Standards" ) '
```

If one of the constituent patterns contains wild card symbols then the number of phrase patterns effectively represented by this pattern is larger than the number of its constituent single phrase patterns.

A text value matches such a <text literal list> pattern if it matches at least one of its constituent patterns. <text literal list> patterns can only be used as constituent patterns of <context condition> patterns.

Note that a <text literal list> pattern may contain both single word patterns and single phrase patterns.

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)

4.2 Text identification facilities

4.2.4.4 Patterns representing phrases with common base reduced forms (patterns of the form <stemmed phrase>)

Patterns of the form [STEMMED] FORM OF <phrase> are effectively treated as a set *SPP* of <phrase> patterns, which is constructed as follows:

Let N be the number of <phrase part representation>s PPR_i simply contained in <stemmed phrase>. Let N_i be 1 (one) if PPR_i represents an optional word. Otherwise, let N_i be the number of <phrasepart representation>s WP_{ij} that share the base reduced form of PPR_i . Let *SPP* be such that *SPP* contains $N_1 * \dots * N_N$ <phrase> patterns.

For a given <phrasepart representation> i there are only occurrences of WP_{ij} and every WP_{ij} occurs in that position. For example,

```
' STEMMED FORM OF GERMAN "Internationale Standards" '
```

is treated as

```
' ( GERMAN "International Standard",  
    GERMAN "Internationaler Standard",  
    GERMAN "Internationales Standard",  
    GERMAN "Internationalem Standard",  
    GERMAN "Internationale Standard",  
    GERMAN "Internationalen Standard",  
    ... ) '
```

Therefore a text matches a <stemmed phrase> pattern if it matches one of the <phrase> patterns of *SPP*. This condition can be rephrased as: A text value matches a <stemmed phrase> pattern if it contains at least one phrase which when replacing each contained word by its base reduced form matches the transformed phrase pattern that is obtained from the <stemmed phrase> by replacing each contained <phrasepart representation> by one of its base reduced forms. Thus, the test:

```
firstSample.Contains(' STEMMED FORM OF GERMAN  
                    "Internationale Standards" ') = 1
```

succeeds since the phrase *International Standards* is contained in *firstSample*.

4.2.5 Patterns specifying context conditions

Patterns for context conditions specify first a set of two or more subpatterns each effectively specifying a set of single word and/or single phrase patterns, and second a window inside of which all subpatterns must be matched.

4.2.5.1 <Proximity expansion> patterns

A <Proximity expansion> pattern is characterized by:

1. a first and second pattern each representing either a single word pattern or a set of single word patterns,
2. a window width which is specified by an integral number of structural units; predefined units are characters, words, sentences, and paragraphs.
3. an indication whether the matches are required to occur in order or not.

For reference purposes these constituents are marked in the example below:

```
' ( "Standards", "International" )           -- first pattern  
  NEAR "language"                          -- second pattern  
  WITHIN 0                                  -- number of units
```

```
SENTENCES          -- kind of unit
IN ORDER           -- matches to occur in order
)'
```

A text value matches a <Proximity expansion> pattern if all the conditions below are met:

1. The text value matches the first pattern.
2. Let *SubS* be a substring of the text value such that:
 - it starts with the first specified unit (character, word, etc.) that is or contains the first character of the portion that matches the first pattern,
 - its length is 1 (one) plus the number of units as specified in the <Proximity expansion> pattern.
3. *SubS* matches the second pattern.
4. If order has been specified then the portion matching the second pattern must not precede the portion matching the first pattern.

Thus the test:

```
firstSample.Contains(' ("Standards", "International" )
                      NEAR "language"
                      WITHIN 0 SENTENCES
                      IN ORDER ') = 1
```

succeeds since the first sentence of *firstSample* contains the words *International* and *language* such that the first one occurs prior to the second one. Note that the text matches the pattern although it does not contain the word *Standards*.

4.2.5.2 <context condition> patterns

A <context condition> pattern is characterized by:

1. two or more patterns S_i each representing either a single word pattern, a set of single word patterns, a single phrase pattern, a set of single phrase patterns, or a set the elements which are single word and/or single phrase patterns.
2. a specification of a window which may be 1 (one) SENTENCE or 1 (one) PARAGRAPH wide.

Using this notation the example pattern of the previous Subclause is respecified as:

```
' ("Standards", "International" ) -- first pattern
  IN SAME SENTENCE AS             -- window specification
  "language" '                   -- second pattern
```

<context condition> and <Proximity expansion> patterns complement each other. The <Proximity expansion> pattern is more flexible with respect to the window and order specifications but allows for two subpatterns only. In contrast, the <context condition> pattern is more restrictive with respect to the windows that can be specified but allows for more than two patterns to be matched within a given window.

A text value matches such a <context condition> pattern if it contains at least one sentence (paragraph) which matches every pattern S_i .

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)

4.2 Text identification facilities

4.2.6 Patterns involving Boolean operators

4.2.6.1 Patterns involving OR operators

Subpatterns of any form can be combined into new patterns by forming an "|" separated list of those subpatterns as in the following example:

```
' "Standard" | "International" | "language" '
```

A text value matches such a pattern if it matches at least one of its subpatterns. Thus the test:

```
secondSample.Contains(' "Standard" |  
                    "International" |  
                    "language" ')=1
```

succeeds since *secondSample* contains the word *International*.

4.2.6.2 Patterns involving AND operators

Subpatterns of the form <search factor> can be combined into new patterns by forming an "&" separated list of those subpatterns as in the following example:

```
' "Standard" & "International" & "language" '
```

A text value matches such a pattern if it matches all of its subpatterns at least once. Thus the test:

```
firstSample.Contains(' "Standard" &  
                    "International" &  
                    "language" ')=1
```

succeeds since *firstSample* contains each of the words *Standard*, *International*, and *language*.

4.2.6.3 Patterns involving negation

Patterns of the form <search primary> can be negated by prefixing them with NOT as in the following example:

```
'NOT "International Standard" '
```

A text value matches such a pattern if the pattern prefixed by NOT does not match that text. Thus the test:

```
secondSample.Contains('NOT "International Standard" ') = 1
```

succeeds since the text *secondSample* does not contain the phrase *International Standard*.

4.2.6.4 Precedence of Boolean operators

Boolean operators take precedence over each other in the following order:

- NOT
- &
- |

Thus the test:

```
secondSample.Contains(' NOT "International Standard" & "test" ') = 1
```

succeeds since the text *secondSample* contains the word *test* but not the phrase *International Standard*.

The precedence can be overridden by putting parenthesis around subpatterns. For example if the previous test is changed by putting the pattern following NOT into parenthesis:

```
secondSample.Contains(' NOT ("International Standard" & "test") ') = 1
```

then this test will succeed since the text *secondSample* does not simultaneously contain both the word *test* and the phrase *International Standard*.

4.2.7 Identification of FullText values which are pertinent to a given text

Patterns of the form IS ABOUT <phrase> allow for the identification of *FullText* values which in an implementation-defined way "is about" or is pertinent to <phrase>. Depending on the criteria an implementation applies when evaluating a pattern, the test

```
firstSample.Contains(' IS ABOUT "International Standard on text  
search facilities" ') = 1
```

will succeed or not.

4.3 Text ranking facilities

When a text value matches a certain pattern there is no indication on how well the text is characterized by that pattern. For instance a text matches the pattern:

```
' ( "Standard", "International", "method" ) '
```

if at least one of the pattern's words (e.g. *Standard*) occurs at least once in that text. The method *Contains* used for performing the test gives no indication about the number of matching words or about the number of occurrences of these words in the text value.

For that end this part of ISO/IEC 13249 provides a *Rank* method for the *FullText* type. This method takes any pattern that can also be used for text identification as in the following example:

```
firstSample.Rank(' ( "Standard", "International", "method" ) '
```

The *Rank* method returns a relevance measure as a non-negative floating point number where larger numbers mean a better match between the text value (*firstSample* in the above example) and the given pattern. The exact relationship between a text value and a pattern and the associated rank value is implementation-defined.

4.4 Language aspects

All values of the *FullText* type are associated with a specific language. The same effectively holds for patterns of the forms:

- <word>,
- <stemmed word>,
- <phrase>,
- <stemmed phrase>.

Language information is required for:

- recognition of word, sentence, and paragraph boundaries,
- expansion of words into sets of patterns composed of similarly sounding words,
- expansion of words into sets of patterns composed of similarly spelled words,
- recognition of matches using base reduced forms,
- treatment of stop words,
- word normalization.

4.4.1 Multilingual texts and patterns

Patterns may be composed of subpatterns that are associated with different languages as in the following example:

```
' ENGLISH "die" & GERMAN "Würfel" '
```

Multilingual patterns can be very useful. In a setting with German as the default language the word *die* would be ignored as a stop word while it is not when marked as an English word.

In contrast text values of the *FullText* type are associated with a single language only. However, a conforming implementation is not required to enforce that the text contents of a *FullText* value is strictly monolingual. Instead any language specific processing of this text is performed according to the rules, conventions, and heuristics (which in turn are implementation-defined) of the language associated with the given *FullText* value.

When matching text values against patterns differing text and pattern languages may be appropriate as in the test:

```
thirdSample.Contains(' ENGLISH "die" & GERMAN "Würfel" ') = 1
```

This test will succeed if the language of *thirdSample* happens to be English and *Würfel* is accepted as a word according to structural criteria. The test will not succeed if the language is German and *die* is recognized as a stop word. Note that *die* (i.e. the feminine form of *the*) is most likely to be one of the implementation-defined stop words.

4.4.2 Treatment of stop words

Stop words are words that occur in text values at a probability which makes these words useless for text identification purposes. It primarily depends on the language whether some word (e.g. *die*) is to be treated as a stop word or not. Other factors such as the universe of discourse may also be taken into account.

The set of stop words for a given language is implementation-defined.

Stop words in patterns affect the identification of text values according to the following rules:

- A pattern of the form <word> or <stemmed word> must not represent a stop word unless it is part of a pattern of the form <phrase> or the form <token list>.
- If a pattern of the form <token list> or <text literal list> simply contains a subpattern of the form <word> or <stemmed word> that represents a stop word then it is implementation-defined whether the stop word is ignored or causes an error.
- Let P be a pattern of the form <phrase > or <stemmed phrase> simply containing n <phrasepart representation>s some of which represent stop words. If stop words do not behave like optional words, then a text value *text* matches P if *text* contains a contiguous sequence of n words starting at some position ($j+1$) such that every ($j+i$)-th word of *text* is a stop word if the i -th word of P is a stop word, or otherwise is matched by the i -th word of P .

Thus the test:

```
firstSample.Contains(' ( "sentence or paragraph" ) ') = 1
```

succeeds since *firstSample* contains the phrase *sentence and paragraph*.

It is implementation-defined whether phrases are admissible that have a stop word as their first or last word or that consist of stop words only. If the latter case is supported then the test:

```
firstSample.Contains(' ( "this and that" ) ') = 1
```

would succeed if *firstSample* contained three consecutive stop words (which is actually not the case).

4.5 Word normalization

When evaluating *Rank* or *Contains* method invocations conforming implementations are allowed to normalize word patterns in an implementation-defined way provided that the words contained in the text values being tested or ranked by the *Rank* or *Contains* methods are effectively processed in the same way. For instance, the word pattern

```
' "Müller" '
```

may be replaced by

```
' "Mueller" '
```

This pattern will be matched by any text value containing at least one occurrence of *Müller* since this word is effectively replaced by *Mueller* before performing the test.

Normalization can possibly result in more matches than would be observed without normalization. In German texts the word *Mueller* (as opposed to *Müller*) has a low occurrence probability. If text values containing *Mueller* are to be identified then unwanted texts (i.e. those containing *Müller* but not *Mueller*) will eventually be identified as well.

4.6 Types and routines provided by this part of ISO/IEC 13249

4.6 Types and routines provided by this part of ISO/IEC 13249

The types and routines provided by this part of ISO/IEC 13249 are divided into two major Categories:

1. types and routines which are for public use,
2. definition oriented types and routines that are used to capture the semantics of the Category 1 types and routines, except for *Rank* methods (see Subclause 5.3.1, "FT_Pattern Type").

4.6.1 Types and routines intended for public use

The following types and routines are intended for public use:

- *FullText* type with
 - methods *Language*,
 - methods *Contains*,
 - methods *Rank*,
 - methods *FullText*,
 - function *FullText_to_Character* to cast a *FullText* value into a character string,
- FT_Pattern type.

4.6.2 Types and routines for definition

All other types and routines that are not covered by Subclause 4.6.1, "Types and routines intended for public use" are used to specify the semantics of the Category 1 types and routines. Implementations conforming to this part of ISO/IEC 13249 do not need to provide these types or routines for public use.

4.6.3 Technique for defining the semantics of Category 1 Contains methods

As far as possible, types and routines of this part of ISO/IEC 13249 are defined by the facilities ISO/IEC 9075. For the Category 1 *Contains* methods this is done in an indirect way. Using the definitional facilities of ISO/IEC 9075, *Contains* methods are defined for the structural patterns of Clause 6. "Structured Search Pattern Types". For a given pattern accepted by a Category 1 *Contains* method, the meaning is defined in terms of an equivalent structural pattern. For example the following pattern:

```
'ENGLISH "die" & GERMAN "Würfel" '
```

is equivalent to the structural pattern:

```
NEW FT_Term(ARRAY[NEW FT_TextLiteral('die', 'ENGLISH'),
                  NEW FT_TextLiteral('Würfel', 'GERMAN')])
```

which in turn is captured by the fact that:

```
NEW FT_Term(ARRAY[NEW FT_TextLiteral('die', 'ENGLISH'),
                  NEW FT_TextLiteral('Würfel', 'GERMAN')]).
  StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
```

returns a pattern which is equal except for some white space characters to the pattern:

```
' ENGLISH "die" & GERMAN "Würfel" '
```

under question. Finally the meaning of

```
thirdSample.Contains(' ENGLISH "die" & GERMAN "Würfel" ') = 1
```

is defined by the meaning of:

```
NEW FT_Term(ARRAY[NEW FT_TextLiteral('die', 'ENGLISH'),
                  NEW FT_TextLiteral('Würfel', 'GERMAN')]).Contains(thirdSample)
```


Blank page

5 Full-Text Types

The types in this family provide for the construction of text and search patterns for searching of text.

5.1 FullText Type and Routines

5.1.1 FullText Type

Purpose

The *FullText* type provides for the construction of text, for testing whether text contains specified patterns, and for turning text into character strings.

Definition

```
CREATE TYPE FullText
AS (
    Contents CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxTextLength),
    Language CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxLanguageLength)
        DEFAULT FT_DefaultLanguage
)
INSTANTIABLE
NOT FINAL

METHOD Contains(pattern FT_Pattern)
    RETURNS INTEGER
    LANGUAGE SQL
    DETERMINISTIC
    READS SQL DATA
    CALLED ON NULL INPUT,

METHOD Contains(pattern CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength))
    RETURNS INTEGER
    LANGUAGE SQL
    DETERMINISTIC
    READS SQL DATA
    CALLED ON NULL INPUT,

METHOD Rank(pattern FT_Pattern)
    RETURNS DOUBLE PRECISION
    LANGUAGE SQL
    FT_RankDeterminism
    READS SQL DATA
    CALLED ON NULL INPUT,

METHOD Rank(pattern CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength))
    RETURNS DOUBLE PRECISION
    LANGUAGE SQL
    FT_RankDeterminism
    READS SQL DATA
    CALLED ON NULL INPUT,
```

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)

5.1.1 FullText Type

```
METHOD Tokenize()  
  RETURNS FullText_Token ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]  
  LANGUAGE SQL  
  DETERMINISTIC  
  CONTAINS SQL  
  RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT,  
  
METHOD TokenizePosition(unit FullText_Token)  
  RETURNS FT_TokenPosition ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]  
  LANGUAGE SQL  
  DETERMINISTIC  
  CONTAINS SQL  
  RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT,  
  
METHOD Segmentize(unit FullText_Token)  
  RETURNS FullText ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]  
  LANGUAGE SQL  
  DETERMINISTIC  
  CONTAINS SQL  
  RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT,  
  
METHOD TokenizeAndStem()  
  RETURNS FullText ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]  
  LANGUAGE SQL  
  DETERMINISTIC  
  CONTAINS SQL  
  RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT,  
  
METHOD TokenizePositionAndStem()  
  RETURNS FullText ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]  
  LANGUAGE SQL  
  DETERMINISTIC  
  CONTAINS SQL  
  RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT,  
  
CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FullText  
  (string CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxTextLength))  
  RETURNS FullText  
  SELF AS RESULT  
  LANGUAGE SQL  
  DETERMINISTIC  
  CONTAINS SQL  
  CALLED ON NULL INPUT,  
  
CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FullText  
  (string CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxTextLength),  
   Language CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxLanguageLength)  
  )  
  RETURNS FullText  
  SELF AS RESULT  
  LANGUAGE SQL  
  DETERMINISTIC  
  CONTAINS SQL  
  CALLED ON NULL INPUT  
  
CREATE CAST (FullText AS CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxTextLength))  
  WITH FUNCTION FullText_to_Character(FullText)
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

- 2) *FT_MaxTextLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a *FullText* value.
- 3) *FT_MaxPatternLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for the character representation of an *FT_Pattern* value.
- 4) *FT_MaxLanguageLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a language specification.
- 5) *FT_DefaultLanguage* is an implementation-defined character string literal which denotes the implementation-defined default language. The length of *FT_DefaultLanguage* does not exceed *FT_MaxLanguageLength*.
- 6) *FT_RankDeterminism* is either NOT DETERMINISTIC or DETERMINISTIC.

Description

- 1) The *FullText* type provides for public use:
 - a) an attribute *Language*,
 - b) a method *Contains(FT_Pattern)*,
 - c) a method *Contains(CHARACTER VARYING)*,
 - d) a method *Rank(FT_Pattern)*,
 - e) a method *Rank(CHARACTER VARYING)*,
 - f) a method *FullText(CHARACTER VARYING)* to initialize a *FullText* value from a character string,
 - g) a method *FullText(CHARACTER VARYING, CHARACTER VARYING)* to initialize a *FullText* value from a character string and a language specification,
 - h) a function *FullText_to_Character(FullText)* to cast a *FullText* value into a character string.
- 2) The attribute *Contents* is not for public use. There are no GRANT statements granting EXECUTE privilege to the observer or mutator method for *Contents*.
- 3) It is implementation-defined whether the method *Rank(FT_Pattern)* and *Rank(CHARACTER VARYING)* are deterministic or possibly non-deterministic.

5.1.2 Contains Methods

Purpose

Search a *FullText* value for a linear search pattern.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD Contains(pattern FT_Pattern)
  RETURNS INTEGER
  FOR FullText
  BEGIN
    --
    -- !! See Description
    --
  END

CREATE METHOD Contains
  (pattern CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength))
  RETURNS INTEGER
  FOR FullText
  RETURN SELF.Contains(CAST(pattern AS FT_Pattern))
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxPatternLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for the character representation of an *FT_Pattern* value.

Description

- 1) The method *Contains(FT_Pattern)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) an *FT_Pattern* value *pattern*.
- 2) The method *Contains(CHARACTER VARYING)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a CHARACTER VARYING value *pattern*.

***** Editor's Note 2-204 *****

Possible Problem:

In the SQL/MM Part 6: Data Mining editing meeting we identified a possible problem in some of the rules where the result of an Invocation is an exception. This problem occurs throughout SQL/MM-Part 2: Full-Text. In the following example, Case a) indicates one possible result of the invocation of *Contains(CHARACTER VARYING)* or *Contains(FT_Pattern)* being an exception.

- 1) The result of the invocation *Contains(CHARACTER VARYING)* or *Contains(FT_Pattern)* is determined as follows:

Case:

- a) If the value of *pattern* does not have the format of a <search expression>, then an exception condition is raised: *SQL/MM Full-Text exception – invalid search expression*.
- b) ...

- 3) The result of the invocation *Contains(CHARACTER VARYING)* or *Contains(FT_Pattern)* is determined as follows:

Case:

- a) If the value of *pattern* does not have the format of a <search expression>, then an exception condition is raised: *SQL/MM Full-Text exception – invalid search expression*.

NOTE 3 <search expression> is defined in Subclause 5.3.1, "FT_Pattern Type".

- b) If *pattern* contains a pattern that meets one of the following conditions, then it is implementation-defined whether an exception condition is raised: *SQL/MM Full-Text exception – invalid search expression*:

- i) A pattern of the form <word> or <stemmed word> specifies a stop word.
- ii) A pattern of the form <phrase> or <stemmed phrase> contains only stop words, or contains leading or trailing stop words.
- iii) A pattern of the form <text literal list> contains only stop words.

NOTE 4 The subrules i), ii), and iii) reflect the behavior of the *Contains* methods for the types *FT_TextLiteral*, *FT_StemmedWord*, *FT_Phrase*, *FT_StemmedPhrase*, and *FT_Any*.

- c) Otherwise:

Case:

- i) If *SELF*, *SELF.Contents*, or *pattern* is the null value, then the null value.
- ii) If the length of *SELF.Contents* is 0 (zero), then 0 (zero).
- iii) Otherwise, let *s_pattern* be the structured pattern of type *FT_Expr*, such that

```
pattern = s_pattern.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
```

Then the result of

```
SELF.Contains(pattern)
```

is

Case:

- A) 1 (one), if

```
s_pattern.Contains(SELF)
```

is True.

- B) 0 (zero), if

```
s_pattern.Contains(SELF)
```

is False.

- C) Otherwise, the null value.

- 4) The result of invocation of *Contains(FT_Pattern)* is invariant to the case of the <key word>s in *FT_Pattern*.

NOTE 5 A list of *FT_Pattern* <key word>s is given in Subclause 5.3.2, "FT_Pattern Key Words".

5.1.3 Rank Methods

Purpose

Search a *FullText* value for a linear search pattern and give the relevance of the pattern.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD Rank(pattern FT_Pattern)
  RETURNS DOUBLE PRECISION
  FOR FullText
  BEGIN
    --
    -- !! See Description
    --
  END

CREATE METHOD Rank
  (pattern CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength))
  RETURNS DOUBLE PRECISION
  FOR FullText
  RETURN SELF.Rank(CAST(pattern AS FT_Pattern))
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxPatternLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for the character representation of an *FT_Pattern* value.

Description

- 1) The method *Rank(FT_Pattern)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) an *FT_Pattern* value *pattern*.
- 2) The method *Rank(CHARACTER VARYING)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a CHARACTER VARYING value *pattern*.
- 3) The result of the invocation *Rank(CHARACTER VARYING)* or *Rank(FT_Pattern)* is determined as follows:

Case:

- a) If the value of *pattern* does not have the format of a <search expression>, then an exception condition is raised: *SQL/MM Full-Text exception – invalid search expression*.

NOTE 6 <search expression> is defined in Subclause 5.3.1, “FT_Pattern Type”.

- b) Otherwise:

Case:

- i) If *SELF*, *SELF.Contents*, or *pattern* is the null value, the null value.
- ii) Otherwise, an implementation-dependent *DOUBLE PRECISION* value constrained by implementation-defined minimum and maximum values. The size of this value is an indication of how relevant *SELF* is for the given pattern.

- 4) The result of invocation of *Rank(FT_Pattern)* is invariant to the case of the <key word>s in *FT_Pattern*.

NOTE 7 A list of *FT_Pattern* <key word>s is given in Subclause 5.3.2, "FT_Pattern Key Words".

5.1.4 Tokenize Method

Purpose

Convert a *FullText* value into a sequence of normalized *FullText_Token* values.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD Tokenize()  
  RETURNS FullText_Token ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]  
  FOR FullText  
  BEGIN  
    --  
    -- !! See Description  
    --  
  END
```

Definitional Rules

1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The method *Tokenize()* has no input parameters.
- 2) *Tokenize()* returns an array representing a sequence of normalized *FullText_Token* items. The result of *Tokenize()* is the null value if *SELF* or *SELF.Contents* is the null value.
- 3) If the length of *SELF.Contents* is 0 (zero), then *Tokenize()* returns an empty array.
- 4) It is implementation-defined whether no stop words of *SELF.Contents*, all stop words of *SELF.Contents*, or all stop words of *SELF.Contents* other than leading and trailing stop words are effectively included in the result of *SELF.Tokenize()*. If stop words are included, then it is implementation-defined how they are effectively represented, provided their representation is such that the result of comparing any two stop words is *True*.
- 5) Further details of the relationship between input and output are implementation-defined. Though not enforced by this standard, it is intended that *Tokenize()* reflects the language structure of the input text being processed. That language is denoted by *SELF.Language*.

5.1.5 TokenizePosition Method

Purpose

Convert a *FullText* value into a sequence of *FT_TokenPosition* values.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD TokenizePosition(unit FullText_Token)
  RETURNS FT_TokenPosition ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]
  FOR FullText
  BEGIN
    --
    -- !! See Description
    --
  END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The method *TokenizePosition(FullText_Token)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *FullText_Token* value *unit* identifying a unit of text.
- 2) The unit information supported is 'CHARACTERS', 'WORDS', 'SENTENCE', 'SENTENCES', 'PARAGRAPH' and 'PARAGRAPHS'.
- 3) If the length of *SELF.Contents* is 0 (zero), then *TokenizePosition(FullText_Token)* returns an empty array.
- 4) *TokenizePosition(FullText_Token)* returns an array representing a set of *FT_TokenPosition* items with the attributes:
 - a) A *FullText_Token* value *token* representing a normalized word occurring in *SELF*.
 - b) An INTEGER value *position* identifying the position of an occurrence of *token* in terms of the *unit* information specified (e.g. "third sentence").
 - c) An INTEGER value *corrVal*. This value is intended to support the computation of the distance between two words as identified by two *FT_TokenPosition* items. *corrVal* is zero for the distance units 'WORDS', 'SENTENCES' and 'PARAGRAPHS'; its value is implementation-defined for distance unit 'CHARACTERS'. In the latter case, possible values are zero, or values related to the length of the associated *token*.

Let *t1* and *t2* be two *FT_TokenPosition* values. An implementation shall define the contents of the attribute *corrVal* in such a way that the distance between *t1.token* and *t2.token* is given by:

$$t2.position - t1.position - t1.corrVal$$

provided *t1* precedes *t2* (i.e. *t2.position* >= *t1.position*).

- 5) The result of *TokenizePosition(FullText_Token)* shall be the null value if:
 - a) *SELF* or *SELF.Contents* is the null value.
 - b) *unit* is the null value or a value not supported by the implementation.

5.1.5 TokenizePosition Method

- 6) It is implementation-defined whether no stop words of *SELF.Contents*, all stop words of *SELF.Contents*, or all stop words of *SELF.Contents* other than leading and trailing stop words are effectively included in the result of *SELF.TokenizePosition(FullText_Token)*. If stop words are included, then it is implementation-defined how they are effectively represented, provided their representation is such that the result of comparing any two stop words is *True*.
- 7) Let *W1* and *W2* be two words contained in *SELF.Contents* and let *TLE1* and *TLE2* be the corresponding elements in the result of *TokenizePosition(FullText_Token)*. The distance between *W1* and *W2* shall be properly captured by *TLE1* and *TLE2* regardless of whether some word between *W1* and *W2* is a stop word and regardless of whether stop words are included in the result of *TokenizePosition(FullText_Token)* or not.
- 8) For all words adopted from *SELF* (whether they are stop words or not) their position relative to each other shall be properly reflected in the result of *TokenizePosition(FullText_Token)*.
- 9) Let *TLE* be the element of *SELF.TokenizePosition('WORDS')* with the lowest *Position* value. If leading stop words are included in the result of *SELF.TokenizePosition('WORDS')* then the value of *TLE.Position* shall be 1 (one).
- 10) Further details of the relationship between input and output are implementation-defined. Though not enforced by this standard, it is intended that *TokenizePosition(FullText_Token)* reflects the language structure of the input text being processed. That language is denoted by *SELF.Language*.

5.1.6 Segmentize Method

Purpose

Convert a *FullText* value into a sequence of *FullText* values.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD Segmentize(unit FullText_Token)
  RETURNS FullText ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]
  FOR FullText
  BEGIN
    --
    -- !! See Description
    --
  END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The method *Segmentize(FullText_Token)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *FullText_Token* value *unit*.
- 2) The *unit* shall be either 'SENTENCE' or 'PARAGRAPH'.

NOTE 8 If an implementation does not support the distance unit 'SENTENCE' and 'PARAGRAPH', then it is not required to support the method *Segmentize(FullText_Token)*. If any of these distance units is supported, the method *Segmentize(FullText_Token)* shall effectively be supported with that distance unit.

- 3) If the length of *SELF.Contents* is 0 (zero), then *Segmentize(FullText_Token)* returns an empty array.
- 4) *Segmentize(FullText_Token)* returns an array of *FullText* values, which are either sentences or paragraphs of text. For every sentence (paragraph) of text there shall be exactly one element in the resulting array the content of which equals the content of this sentence (paragraph). The relative order of resulting array elements shall be the same as the order of the associated sentences (paragraphs).
- 5) Further details of the relationship between input and output are implementation-defined. Though not enforced by this standard, it is intended that *Segmentize(FullText_Token)* reflects the language structure of the input text being processed. That language is denoted by *SELF.Language*.

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)
5.1.7 TokenizeAndStem Method

5.1.7 TokenizeAndStem Method

Purpose

Convert a *FullText* value into a sequence of normalized and stem-reduced *FullText_Token* values.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD TokenizeAndStem()  
  RETURNS FullText_Token ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]  
  FOR FullText  
  BEGIN  
    --  
    -- !! See Description  
    --  
  END
```

Definitional Rules

1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The method *TokenizeAndStem()* has no input parameters.
- 2) *TokenizeAndStem()* returns an array representing a sequence of normalized and stem-reduced *FullText_Token* values. The result of *TokenizeAndStem()* is the null value if *SELF* or *SELF.Contents* is the null value.
- 3) If the length of *SELF.Contents* is 0 (zero), then *TokenizeandStem()* returns an empty array.
- 4) It is implementation-defined whether no stop words of *SELF.Contents*, all stop words of *SELF.Contents*, or all stop words of *SELF.Contents* other than leading and trailing stop words are effectively included in the result of *SELF.TokenizeAndStem()*. If stop words are included, then it is implementation-defined how they are effectively represented, provided their representation is such that the result of comparing any two stop words is True.
- 5) Further details of the relationship between input and output are implementation-defined. Though not enforced by this standard, it is intended that *TokenizeAndStem()* reflects the language structure of the input text being processed. That language is denoted by *SELF.Language*.

5.1.8 TokenizePositionAndStem Method

Purpose

Convert a *FullText* value into a sequence of *FT_TokenPosition* values.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD TokenizePositionAndStem()  
  RETURNS FT_TokenPosition ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]  
  FOR FullText  
  BEGIN  
    --  
    -- !! See Description  
    --  
  END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The method *TokenizePositionAndStem()* has no input parameters.
- 2) *TokenizePositionAndStem()* returns an array representing a set of *FT_TokenPosition* values with the attributes:
 - a) A *FullText_Token* value *token* representing a word occurring in *SELF*; that word is represented in a normalized way and is reduced to its stemmed form.
 - b) An INTEGER value *position* identifying the position of an occurrence of *token* in terms of words.
 - c) An INTEGER value *corrVal* set to zero.
- 3) The result of *TokenizePositionAndStem()* shall be the null value if *SELF* or *SELF.Contents* is the null value.
- 4) If the length of *SELF.Contents* is 0 (zero), then *TokenizePositionAndStem()* returns an empty array.
- 5) It is implementation-defined whether no stop words of *SELF.Contents*, all stop words of *SELF.Contents*, or all stop words of *SELF.Contents* other than leading and trailing stop words are effectively included in the result of *SELF.TokenizePositionAndStem()*. If stop words are included, then it is implementation-defined how they are effectively represented, provided their representation is such that the result of comparing any two stop words is True.
- 6) Let *W1* and *W2* be two words contained in *SELF.Contents* and let *TLE1* and *TLE2* be the corresponding elements in the result of *TokenizePositionAndStem()*. The distance between *W1* and *W2* shall be properly captured by *TLE1* and *TLE2*, regardless of whether some word between *W1* and *W2* is a stop word and regardless of whether stop words are included in the result of *TokenizePositionAndStem()* or not.
- 7) Let *TLE* be the element of *SELF.TokenizePositionAndStem()* with the lowest *Position* value. If leading stop words are included in the result of *SELF.TokenizePositionAndStem()* then the value of *TLE.Position* shall be 1 (one), otherwise the value of *TLE.Position* shall be one more than the number of leading stop words.

5.1.8 TokenizePositionAndStem Method

- 8) Further details of the relationship between input and output are implementation-defined. Though not enforced by this standard, it is intended that *TokenizePositionAndStem(FullText_Token)* reflects the language structure of the input text being processed. That language is denoted by *SELF.Language*.

5.1.9 FullText Methods

Purpose

Return a specified *FullText* value.

Definition

```

CREATE CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FullText
  (string CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxTextLength))
  RETURNS FullText
  FOR FullText
  RETURN SELF.Contents(string)

CREATE CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FullText
  (string CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxTextLength),
   Language CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxLanguageLength)
  )
  RETURNS FullText
  FOR FullText
  BEGIN
    DECLARE InvalidLanguage CONDITION FOR SQLSTATE '2FF02';

    IF Language IS NULL OR
       Language = '' OR
       --
       -- if Language does not specify a supported language
       --
    THEN
      SIGNAL InvalidLanguage
        SET MESSAGE_TEXT = 'invalid language specification';
    END IF;

    RETURN SELF.Contents(string).Language(Language);
  END

```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxTextLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a *FullText* value.
- 2) *FT_MaxLanguageLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a language specification.

Description

- 1) The method *FullText*(*CHARACTER VARYING*) takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *CHARACTER VARYING* value *string*.
- 2) The method *FullText*(*CHARACTER VARYING*, *CHARACTER VARYING*) takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *CHARACTER VARYING* value *string*,
 - b) a *CHARACTER VARYING* value *Language*.
- 3) If the value of *Language* is the empty string or the null value or *Language* does not specify a supported language, then the method *FullText*(*CHARACTER VARYING*, *CHARACTER VARYING*) raises an exception condition: *SQL/MM Full-Text exception – invalid language specification*.

5.1.10 FullText_to_Character Function

Purpose

Return the character representation of a *FullText* value.

Definition

```
CREATE FUNCTION FullText_to_Character (text FullText)
  RETURNS CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxTextLength)
  LANGUAGE SQL
  DETERMINISTIC
  CONTAINS SQL
  CALLED ON NULL INPUT
  STATIC DISPATCH
  RETURN text.Contents
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxTextLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a *FullText* value.

Description

- 1) The function *FullText_to_Character(FullText)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *FullText* value *text*.

5.1.11 StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Function

Purpose

Convert a sequence of *FT_WordOrPhrase* values to an *FT_Pattern* value.

Definition

```
CREATE FUNCTION StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern
  (woparray FT_WordOrPhrase ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength])
  RETURNS FT_Pattern
  LANGUAGE SQL
  DETERMINISTIC
  CONTAINS SQL
  RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT
  STATIC DISPATCH
  BEGIN
    DECLARE result CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength);
    DECLARE i INTEGER;

    SET i = 1;
    SET result = '(';
    WHILE i <= CARDINALITY(woparray) DO
      SET result = result
        || CAST(woparray[i].StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
              AS CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength))
        || ',';
      SET i = i + 1;
    END WHILE;
    SET result = TRIM(TRAILING ',' FROM result) || ')';
    RETURN CAST(result AS FT_Pattern);
  END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxPatternLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for the character representation of an *FT_Pattern* value.
- 2) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The function *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern(FT_WordOrPhrase ARRAY)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) an array *woparray* whose elements are *FT_WordOrPhrase* values.
- 2) *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern(FT_WordOrPhrase ARRAY)* returns an *FT_Pattern* value of the form <token list>.
- 3) If the input argument *woparray* is the null value, then *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern(FT_WordOrPhrase ARRAY)* returns the null value.

5.2 FT_TokenPosition Type and Routines

5.2.1 FT_TokenPosition Type

Purpose

The *FT_TokenPosition* type provides facilities for the construction of data items intended to represent occurrences of words in some text.

Definition

```
CREATE TYPE FT_TokenPosition
  AS (
    token FullText_Token,
    position INTEGER,
    corrVal INTEGER
  )
  INSTANTIABLE
  NOT FINAL
```

Description

- 1) The *FT_TokenPosition* type provides:
 - a) an attribute *token*,
 - b) an attribute *position*,
 - c) an attribute *corrVal*.
- 2) The purpose of the *FT_TokenPosition* attributes is described in Subclause 5.1.5, "TokenizePosition Method" which is used to initialize these attributes.

5.3 FT_Pattern Type and Routines

5.3.1 FT_Pattern Type

Purpose

The *FT_Pattern* type provides for linear search patterns.

Definition

```
CREATE TYPE FT_Pattern
  AS CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength)
  FINAL
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxPatternLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for the character representation of an *FT_Pattern* value.

Description

- 1) The *FT_Pattern* type provides for public use a CHARACTER VARYING value.
- 2) Values of *FT_Pattern* type are meant as input to the method *Contains(FT_Pattern)* of the *FullText* type.

NOTE 9 The *FullText* type is described in Subclause 5.1.1, "FullText Type".

- 3) Values of *FT_Pattern* must be producible from the following BNF for <search expression>.

```
<search expression> ::=
  <search term>
  | <search expression> <vertical bar> <search term>
```

```
<vertical bar> ::= |
```

```
<search term> ::=
  <search factor>
  | <search term> <ampersand> <search factor>
```

```
<ampersand> ::= &
```

```
<search factor> ::=
  [ NOT ] <search primary>
```

```
<search primary> ::=
  <text literal>
  | <text function invocation>
  | <context condition>
  | <left paren> <search expression> <right paren>
```

```
<text literal> ::=
  <word>
  | <phrase>
  | <stemmed word>
  | <stemmed phrase>
```

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)

5.3.1 FT_Pattern Type

```
<word> ::=
  [ <language specification> ] <double quote>
    <word representation> <double quote>
  [ <escape specification> ]

<language specification> ::= !! See Description

<double quote> ::=
  !! See Subclause 5.1, <SQL terminal character>,
  !!   in part 2 of ISO/IEC 9075

<escape specification> ::=
  ESCAPE <double quote> <escape representation character>
  <double quote>

<escape representation character> ::= !! See Description

<phrase> ::=
  [ <language specification> ] <double quote>
    <phrase representation> <double quote>
  [ <escape specification> ]

<word representation> ::= <word representation part> ...

<word representation part> ::=
  <word representation character>
  | <doublequote symbol>

<word representation character> ::= !! See Description

<doublequote symbol> ::=
  !! See Subclause 5.2, <token> and <separator>, in part 2
  !!   of ISO/IEC 9075

<phrase representation> ::=
  <phrasepart representation> [<word separator>] <phrasepart
  representation>
  [ { [<word separator>] <phrasepart representation>} ... ]

<phrasepart representation> ::=
  <word representation>
  | <optional word representation>

<optional word representation> ::= %

<word separator> ::= !! See Description

<stemmed word> ::=
  [ STEMMED ] FORM OF <word>

<stemmed phrase> ::=
  [ STEMMED ] FORM OF <phrase>

<text function invocation> ::=
  <Proximity expansion>
  | <about expansion>
  | <expansion function invocation>
```

```
<expansion function invocation> ::=
  <Soundex expansion>
  | <Fuzzy expansion>
  | <Broader_Term expansion>
  | <Narrower_Term expansion>
  | <Synonym expansion>
  | <Preferred_Term expansion>
  | <Related_Term expansion>
  | <Top_Term expansion>

<Proximity expansion> ::=
  <token list1> NEAR <token list2> WITHIN <distance> <unit> <order>

<token list1> ::=
  <token list>

<token list2> ::=
  <token list>

<token list> ::=
  <left paren> <word specification>
  [ { <comma> <word specification> }... ] <right paren>

<left paren> ::= (
<right paren> ::= )

<comma> ::= ,

<word specification> ::=
  <word>
  | <stemmed word>

<distance> ::= <unsigned integer>

<unsigned integer> ::=
  !! See Subclause 5.3, <literal>, in part 2 of ISO/IEC 9075

<unit> ::=
  CHARACTERS
  | WORDS
  | SENTENCES
  | PARAGRAPHS

<order> ::=
  ANY ORDER
  | IN ORDER

<Soundex expansion> ::=
  SOUNDS LIKE <word>

<Fuzzy expansion> ::=
  FUZZY FORM OF <word>

<Broader_Term expansion> ::=
  THESAURUS <thesaurus specification>
  EXPAND BROADER TERM OF <text literal>
  [FOR <thesaurus expansion count> { LEVEL | LEVELS }]

<thesaurus specification> ::=
  <double quote> <thesaurus name representation> <double quote>

<thesaurus name representation> ::= <thesaurus name character>...
```

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)

5.3.1 FT_Pattern Type

```
<thesaurus name character> ::= !! See Description

<thesaurus expansion count> ::= <unsigned integer>

<Narrower_Term expansion> ::=
    THESAURUS <thesaurus specification>
    EXPAND NARROWER TERM OF <text literal>
    [FOR <thesaurus expansion count> { LEVEL | LEVELS }]

<Synonym expansion> ::=
    THESAURUS <thesaurus specification>
    EXPAND SYNONYM TERM OF <text literal>

<Preferred_Term expansion> ::=
    THESAURUS <thesaurus specification>
    EXPAND PREFERRED TERM OF <text literal>

<Related_Term expansion> ::=
    THESAURUS <thesaurus specification>
    EXPAND RELATED TERM OF <text literal>

<Top_Term expansion> ::=
    THESAURUS <thesaurus specification>
    EXPAND TOP TERM OF <text literal>

<context condition> ::=
    <context argument> IN SAME <context unit> AS
    <context argument> [ { AND <context argument> } ... ]

<context unit> ::=
    SENTENCE
    | PARAGRAPH

<context argument> ::=
    <text literal>
    | <text literal list>
    | <expansion function invocation>

<text literal list> ::=
    <left paren> <text literal>
    [ { <comma> <text literal> } ... ] <right paren>

<about expansion> ::=
    IS ABOUT <word or phrase>

<word or phrase> ::=
    <word>
    | <phrase>
```

NOTE 10 A list of *FT_Pattern* <key word>s is given in Subclause 5.3.2, "FT_Pattern Key Words". Although these <key word>s are shown above in upper case, methods that accept *FT_Pattern* arguments are invariant to the case of these <key word>s.

- a) A <word representation> is a non-empty sequence of <word representation part>s. A <word representation part> is either a <word representation character> or a <doublequote symbol>. The set of <word representation character>s does not contain <double quote>. Other than that, the set of <word representation character>s is implementation-defined; though not enforced by this standard, it is intended that the corresponding rules reflect the characteristics of the specific language from which the word has been taken. Wild card characters '_' and '%' shall be among the admissible characters; however, a <word representation> shall contain at least one character that is not treated as a wild card character.

If a <word representation> *WR* is immediately contained in a <word> or <phrase> which immediately contains an <escape specification> *ES*, then let *E* be the <escape representation character> immediately contained in *ES*. *E* must be followed by either *E*, '%', or '_'. If *WR* contains either a '%' or an '_' that is preceded by *E*, those characters represent a '%' or an '_', and not a wild card character. If an *E* is preceded by an *E*, the second *E* does not represent an <escape representation character>. *E* must be followed by either *E*, '%', or '_'.

A <Broader_Term expansion>, <Narrower_Term expansion>, <Synonym_Term expansion>, <Preferred_Term expansion>, <Related_Term expansion>, or <Top_Term expansion> shall not contain a <stemmed word> or <stemmed phrase>.

- b) A <phrase representation> is a sequence (two or more items) of <phrasepart representation>s. It is implementation-defined whether a specific <word separator> character is needed between two consecutive <phrasepart representation>s; though not enforced by this standard, it is intended that the corresponding rules reflect the characteristics of the specific language in which the phrase is being expressed. A <phrasepart representation> shall contain at least one <word representation>.

NOTE 11 If a <phrasepart representation> *PPR* is simply contained in a <phrase> which specifies an <escape specification> *ES*, then let *E* be the <escape character> immediately contained in *ES*. If *PPR* is *E%* then *PPR* does not represent an optional word.

- c) Each <word>, <stemmed word>, <phrase>, or <stemmed phrase> instance is associated with some language. This language is either explicitly or implicitly specified. The details of the <language specification>, as well as the default language is implementation-defined.
- d) A <word> simply contained in a <Soundex expansion> or <Fuzzy expansion>, and a <text literal> simply contained in a <Broader_Term expansion>, <Narrower_Term expansion>, <Synonym expansion>, <Preferred_Term expansion>, <Related_Term expansion>, or <Top_Term expansion> shall not simply contain a <word representation character> that is treated as a wild card character, nor shall it simply contain an <escape specification>.
- e) A <stemmed word> or <stemmed phrase> shall not simply contain a <word representation character> that is treated as a wild card character, nor shall it simply contain an <escape specification>.
- f) <unit> and <context unit> instance denote document units. Document units are:

CHARACTERS
WORDS
SENTENCE
SENTENCES
PARAGRAPH
PARAGRAPHS

A conforming implementation must support at least one predefined document unit. Functionality depending on a certain document unit need only be supported if that document unit is supported. The document units supported are implementation-defined.

- 4) The characters <thesaurus name character> that can be used to construct thesaurus names are implementation-defined.
- 5) Let *T* and *P* be a *FullText* value and an *FT_Pattern* value respectively. The value of *T.Contains(P)* is determined by the following:
- a) If *P* is a <search expression> of the form *SE* <vertical bar> *ST*, then the result of

T.Contains(P)

is

5.3.1 FT_Pattern Type

Case:

- i) 1 (one), if

$(T.Contains(SE) = 1) \text{ OR } (T.Contains(ST) = 1)$

is True.

- ii) 0 (zero), if

$(T.Contains(SE) = 1) \text{ OR } (T.Contains(ST) = 1)$

is False.

- iii) Otherwise, the null value.

- b) If P is a <search term> of the form ST <ampersand> SF , then the result of

$T.Contains(P)$

is

Case:

- i) 1 (one), if

$(T.Contains(ST) = 1) \text{ AND } (T.Contains(SF) = 1)$

is True.

- ii) 0 (zero), if

$(T.Contains(ST) = 1) \text{ AND } (T.Contains(SF) = 1)$

is False.

- iii) Otherwise, the null value.

- c) If P is a <search factor> of the form NOT SP , then the result of

$T.Contains(P)$

is

Case:

- i) 1 (one), if

$\text{NOT } T.Contains(SP)$

is True.

- ii) 0 (zero), if

$\text{NOT } T.Contains(SP)$

is False.

- iii) Otherwise, the null value.

- d) If P is a <word> W or a <stemmed word> W , then:

- i) If *W* does not immediately contain a <language specification>, then augment *W* with <language specification> denoting the default language.
- ii) If *P* is <stemmed word> and *W* does not specify the optional key word STEMMED then augment *W* with the optional key word STEMMED.

Let *STL* be an *FT_TextLiteral* or an *FT_StemmedWord* value such that

```
W = STL.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
```

The result of

```
T.Contains(W)
```

is

Case:

- i) 1 (one), if

```
STL.Contains(T)
```

is True.

- ii) 0 (zero), if

```
STL.Contains(T)
```

is False.

- iii) Otherwise, the null value.

(i.e. *Contains* returns 1 (one) if *T* contains at least one token which matches *W* (if no <stemmed word> has been specified), or *T* contains at least one token the stem of which matches the stem of *W* (if <stemmed word> has been specified).)

NOTE 12 A word pattern *W* may contain wild card characters '_' (denoting a single character from the character set of <search expression>) or '%' (denoting a string of any length (zero or more) composed of characters from the character set of <search expression>).

- e) If *P* is a <phrase> *PHR* or a <stemmed phrase> *PHR*, then:
 - i) If *PHR* does not immediately contains a <language specification>, then augment *PHR* with <language specification> denoting the default language.
 - ii) If *P* is <stemmed phrase> and *PHR* does not specify the optional key word STEMMED then augment *PHR* with the optional key word STEMMED.

Let *SPP* be an *FT_Phrase* or an *FT_StemmedPhrase* value such that

```
PHR = SPP.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
```

then the result of

```
T.Contains(PHR)
```

is

Case:

5.3.1 FT_Pattern Type

i) 1 (one), if
`SPP.Contains(T)`

is True.

ii) 0 (zero), if
`SPP.Contains(T)`

is False.

iii) Otherwise, the null value.

(i.e. *Contains* returns 1 (one) if *T* contains a sequence of tokens which match *PHR*. The match condition details are given in Subclause 6.6, "FT_Phrase Type and Routines", and in Subclause 6.7, "FT_StemmedPhrase Type and Routines".)

NOTE 13 A token of *PHR* may be composed of wild card characters only. If such a token consists of one or more '%',s, then it denotes an optional word.

f) If *P* is a <Proximity expansion> *PFI*, then let *TL1* be <token list1> and *TL2* be <token list2>. Augment both *TL1* and *TL2* such that every occurrence of a <word>, or <stemmed word> which does not specify a <language specification> is adorned by a <language specification> denoting the default language. Additionally augment both *TL1* and *TL2* such that every occurrence of <stemmed word> which does not specify the optional key word *STEMMED* is adorned by this missing optional key word.

Case:

i) If *TL1* is a <Broader_Term expansion>, let *SBT* be an *FT_BroaderTerm* value such that *TL1* is equal to *SBT.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*. Replace *TL1* in *PFI* by the result of:

```
StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern(GetBroaderTerms(SBT.thesaurus,
SBT.startingTerm, SBT.expansionCnt))
```

If *TL2* is a <Broader_Term expansion>, let *SBT* be an *FT_BroaderTerm* value such that *TL2* is equal to *SBT.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*. Replace *TL2* in *PFI* by the result of:

```
StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern(GetBroaderTerms(SBT.thesaurus,
SBT.startingTerm, SBT.expansionCnt))
```

ii) If *TL1* is a <Narrower_Term expansion>, let *SNT* be an *FT_NarrowerTerm* value such that *TL1* is equal to *SNT.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*. Replace *TL1* in *PFI* by the result of:

```
StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern(GetNarrowerTerms(SNT.thesaurus,
SNT.startingTerm, SNT.expansionCnt))
```

If *TL2* is a <Narrower_Term expansion>, let *SNT* be an *FT_NarrowerTerm* value such that *TL2* is equal to *SNT.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*. Replace *TL2* in *PFI* by the result of:

```
StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern(GetNarrowerTerms(SNT.thesaurus,
SNT.startingTerm, SNT.expansionCnt))
```

iii) If *TL1* is a <Synonym expansion>, let *SST* be an *FT_Synonym* value such that *TL1* is equal to *SST.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*. Replace *TL1* in *PFI* by the result of:

```
StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern(GetSynonymTerms(SST.thesaurus,
SST.startingTerm))
```

If *TL2* is a <Synonym expansion>, let *SST* be an *FT_Synonym* value such that *TL2* is equal to *SST.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*. Replace *TL2* in *PFI* by the result of:

```
StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern(GetSynonymTerms(SST.thesaurus,  
SST.startingTerm))
```

- iv) If *TL1* is a <Preferred_Term expansion>, let *SPT* be an *FT_PREFERREDTERM* value such that *TL1* is equal to *SPT.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*. Replace *TL1* in *PFI* by the result of:

```
StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern(GetPreferredTerms(SPT.thesaurus,  
SPT.startingTerm))
```

If *TL2* is a <Preferred_Term expansion>, let *SPT* be an *FT_PREFERREDTERM* value such that *TL2* is equal to *SPT.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*. Replace *TL2* in *PFI* by the result of:

```
StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern(GetPreferredTerms(SPT.thesaurus,  
SPT.startingTerm))
```

- v) If *TL1* is a <Related_Term expansion>, let *SRT* be an *FT_RELATEDTERM* value such that *TL1* is equal to *SRT.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*. Replace *TL1* in *PFI* by the result of:

```
StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern(GetRelatedTerms(SRT.thesaurus,  
SRT.startingTerm))
```

If *TL2* is a <Related_Term expansion>, let *SRT* be an *FT_RELATEDTERM* value such that *TL2* is equal to *SRT.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*. Replace *TL2* in *PFI* by the result of:

```
StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern(GetRelatedTerms(SRT.thesaurus,  
SRT.startingTerm))
```

- vi) If *TL1* is a <Top_Term expansion>, let *STT* be an *FT_TopTerm* value such that *TL1* is equal to *STT.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*. Replace *TL1* in *PFI* by the result of:

```
StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern(GetTopTerms(STT.thesaurus,  
STT.startingTerm))
```

If *TL2* is a <Top_Term expansion>, let *STT* be an *FT_TopTerm* value such that *TL2* is equal to *STT.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*. Replace *TL2* in *PFI* by the result of:

```
StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern(GetTopTerms(STT.thesaurus,  
STT.startingTerm))
```

- vii) If *TL1* is a <Soundex expansion>, let *SPHT* be an *FT_Soundex* value such that *TL1* is equal to *SPHT.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*. Replace *TL1* in *PFI* by the result of:

```
StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern(GetSoundsSimilar(SPHT.spoken))
```

If *TL2* is a <Soundex expansion>, let *SPHT* be an *FT_Soundex* value such that *TL2* is equal to *SPHT.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*. Replace *TL2* in *PFI* by the result of:

```
StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern(GetSoundsSimilar(SPHT.spoken))
```

- viii) If *TL1* is a <Fuzzy expansion>, let *SFT* be an *FT_Fuzzy* value such that *TL1* is equal to *SFT.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*. Replace *TL1* in *PFI* by the result of:

```
StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern(GetSpelledSimilar(SFT.spelled))
```

If *TL2* is a <Fuzzy expansion>, let *SFT* be an *FT_Fuzzy* value such that *TL2* is equal to *SFT.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*. Replace *TL2* in *PFI* by the result of:

```
StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern(GetSpelledSimilar(SFT.spelled))
```

5.3.1 FT_Pattern Type

Let *SPR* be an *FT_Proxi* value such that

```
PFI = SPR.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
```

then the result of

```
T.Contains(PFI)
```

is

Case:

i) 1 (one), if

```
SPR.Contains(T)
```

is True.

ii) 0 (zero), if

```
SPR.Contains(T)
```

is False.

iii) Otherwise, the null value.

g) If *P* is a <context condition> *CCD*, let *n* be the number of <context argument>s immediately contained in *CCD*. For *i* ranging from 1 to *n*, let *Cai* be these <context argument>s. In every *Cai*, augment every occurrence of a <word>, <stemmed word>, <phrase>, or a <stemmed phrase> which does not specify a <language specification> by a <language specification> that denotes the default language. Additionally, in every *Cai*, augment every occurrence of <stemmed word> or <stemmed phrase> which does not specify the optional key word *STEMMED* by this missing optional key word. Let *CCDC* be the canonical form of *CCD*, which is obtained by replacing every *Cai* as follows:

Case:

i) If *Cai* is a <text literal>, replace *Cai* by:

```
(Cai)
```

ii) If *Cai* is a <Broader_Term expansion>, let *SBT* be an *FT_BroaderTerm* value such that *Cai* is equal to *SBT.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*. Replace *Cai* by the result of:

```
StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern(GetBroaderTerms(SBT.thesaurus,
                                           SBT.startingTerm, SBT.expansionCnt))
```

iii) If *Cai* is a <Narrower_Term expansion>, let *SNT* be an *FT_NarrowerTerm* value such that *Cai* is equal to *SNT.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*. Replace *Cai* by the result of:

```
StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern(GetNarrowerTerms(SNT.thesaurus,
                                             SNT.startingTerm, SNT.expansionCnt))
```

iv) If *Cai* is a <Synonym expansion>, let *SST* be an *FT_Synonym* value such that *Cai* is equal to *SST.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*. Replace *Cai* by the result of:

```
StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern(GetSynonymTerms(SST.thesaurus,
                                             SST.startingTerm))
```

v) If *Cai* is a <Preferred_Term expansion>, let *SPT* be an *FT_PreferedTerm* value such that *Cai* is equal to *SPT.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*. Replace *Cai* by the result of:

StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern(GetPreferredTerms(SPT.thesaurus,
SPT.startingTerm))

- vi) If *Cai* is a <Related_Term expansion>, let *SRT* be an *FT_RelatedTerm* value such that *Cai* is equal to *SRT.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*. Replace *Cai* by the result of:

StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern(GetRelatedTerms(SRT.thesaurus,
SRT.startingTerm))

- vii) If *Cai* is a <Top_Term expansion>, let *STT* be an *FT_TopTerm* value such that *Cai* is equal to *STT.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*. Replace *Cai* by the result of:

StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern(GetTopTerms(STT.thesaurus,
STT.startingTerm))

- viii) If *Cai* is a <Soundex expansion>, let *SPHT* be an *FT_Soundex* value such that *Cai* is equal to *SPHT.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*. Replace *Cai* by the result of:

StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern(GetSoundsSimilar(SPHT.spoken))

- ix) If *Cai* is a <Fuzzy expansion>, let *SFT* be an *FT_Fuzzy* value such that *Cai* is equal to *SFT.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*. Replace *Cai* by the result of:

StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern(GetSpelledSimilar(SFT.spelled))

- x) Otherwise, *Cai* is left unchanged.

Let *SCR* be an *FT_Context* value such that

CCDC = SCR.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()

Then the result of

T.Contains(CCDC)

is

Case:

- i) 1 (one), if

SCR.Contains(T)

is True.

- ii) 0 (zero), if

SCR.Contains(T)

is False.

- iii) Otherwise, the null value.

- h) If *P* is of the form <left paren> <search expression> <right paren>, augment *P* such that every occurrence of a <word>, <stemmed word>, <phrase>, or a <stemmed phrase> which does not specify a <language specification> is adorned by a <language specification> denoting the default language. Additionally augment *P* such that every occurrence of <stemmed word> or <stemmed phrase> which does not specify the optional key word STEMMED is adorned by this missing optional key word. Let *SPSE* be an *FT_ParExpr* value such that

5.3.1 FT_Pattern Type

P = SPSE.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()

Then the result of

T.Contains(P)

is

Case:

i) 1 (one), if

SPSE.Contains(T)

is True.

ii) 0 (zero), if

SPSE.Contains(T)

is False.

iii) Otherwise, the null value.

i) If P is a <Soundex expansion> SFI, augment SFI such that the occurrence of a <word> which does not specify a <language specification> is adorned by a <language specification> denoting the default language. Let SSO be an FT_Soundex value such that

SFI = SSO.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()

then the result of

T.Contains(SFI)

is

Case:

i) 1 (one), if

SSO.Contains(T)

is True.

ii) 0 (zero), if

SSO.Contains(T)

is False.

iii) Otherwise, the null value.

j) If P is a <Fuzzy expansion> FFI, augment FFI such that every occurrence of a <word> or a <phrase> which does not specify a <language specification> is adorned by a <language specification> denoting the default language. Let SFO be an FT_Fuzzy value such that

FFI = SFO.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()

then the result of

T.Contains(FFI)

is the result of

`SFO.Contains(T)`

- k) If *P* is a <Broader_Term expansion> *BFI*, augment *BFI* such that every occurrence of a <word> or a <phrase> which does not specify a <language specification> is adorned by a <language specification> denoting the default language. Let *SBT* be an *FT_BroaderTerm* value such that

`BFI = SBT.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()`

then the result of

`T.Contains(BFI)`

is

Case:

- i) 1 (one), if

`SBT.Contains(T)`

is True.

- ii) 0 (zero), if

`SBT.Contains(T)`

is False.

- iii) Otherwise, the null value.

NOTE 14 If FOR <thesaurus expansion count> LEVELS has not been specified, then according to the specification of Subclause 6.11.3, "StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method" and Subclause 6.11.5 "GetBroaderTerms Function" the expansion of <text literal> immediately contained in <Broader_Term expansion > is carried on until no further expansion term can be found.

- l) If *P* is a <Narrower_Term expansion> *NFI*, augment *NFI* such that every occurrence of a <word> or a <phrase> which does not specify a <language specification> is adorned by a <language specification> denoting the default language. Let *SNT* be an *FT_NarrowerTerm* value such that

`NFI = SNT.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()`

then the result of

`T.Contains(NFI)`

is

Case:

- i) 1 (one), if

`SNT.Contains(T)`

is True.

- ii) 0 (zero), if

`SNT.Contains(T)`

5.3.1 FT_Pattern Type

is False.

iii) Otherwise, the null value.

NOTE 15 If FOR <thesaurus expansion count> LEVELS has not been specified, then according to the specification of Subclause 6.12.3, "StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method" and Subclause 6.12.5 "GetNarrowerTerms Function" the expansion of <text literal> immediately contained in <Narrower_Term expansion > is carried on until no further expansion term can be found.

m) If *P* is a <Synonym expansion> *SYFI*, augment *SYFI* such that every occurrence of a <word> or a <phrase> which does not specify a <language specification> is adorned by a <language specification> denoting the default language. Let *SST* be an *FT_Synonym* value such that

`SYFI = SST.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()`

then the result of

`T.Contains(SYFI)`

is

Case:

i) 1 (one), if

`SST.Contains(T)`

is True.

ii) 0 (zero), if

`SST.Contains(T)`

is False.

iii) Otherwise, the null value.

n) If *P* is a <Related_Term expansion> *RTFI*, augment *RTFI* such that every occurrence of a <word> or a <phrase> which does not specify a <language specification> is adorned by a <language specification> denoting the default language. Let *SRT* be an *FT_RelatedTerm* value such that

`RTFI = SRT.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()`

then the result of

`T.Contains(RTFI)`

is

Case:

i) 1 (one), if

`SRT.Contains(T)`

is True.

ii) 0 (zero), if

`SRT.Contains(T)`

is False.

iii) Otherwise, the null value.

- o) If P is a <Preferred_Term expansion> $PTFI$, augment $PTFI$ such that every occurrence of a <word> or a <phrase> which does not specify a <language specification> is adorned by a <language specification> denoting the default language. Let SPT be an $FT_PreferredTerm$ value such that

$PTFI = SPT.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()$

then the result of

$T.Contains(PTFI)$

is

Case:

- i) 1 (one), if

$SPT.Contains(T)$

is True.

- ii) 0 (zero), if

$SPT.Contains(T)$

is False.

iii) Otherwise, the null value.

- p) If P is a <Top_Term expansion> $TTFI$, augment $TTFI$ such that every occurrence of a <word> or a <phrase> which does not specify a <language specification> is adorned by a <language specification> denoting the default language. Let STT be an $FT_TopTerm$ value such that

$TTFI = STT.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()$

then the result of

$T.Contains(TTFI)$

is

Case:

- i) 1 (one), if

$STT.Contains(T)$

is True.

- ii) 0 (zero), if

$STT.Contains(T)$

is False.

iii) Otherwise, the null value.

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)
5.3.1 FT_Pattern Type

- q) If P is an <about expansion> $IAFI$, augment $IAFI$ such that the contained <word> or <phrase>, if it does not specify a <language specification>, is adorned by a <language specification> denoting the default language. Let SIA be an $FT_IsAbout$ value such that

$IAFI = SIA.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()$

then the result of

$T.Contains(IAFI)$

is

Case:

- i) 1 (one), if

$SIA.Contains(T)$

is True.

- ii) 0 (zero), if

$SIA.Contains(T)$

is False.

- iii) Otherwise, the null value.

5.3.2 FT_Pattern Key Words

Purpose

This subclause contains a list of all the <key word>s allowed in the *FT_Pattern* type. They are provided here for easy reference.

Definition

```
<key word> ::=  
  ABOUT | AND | ANY | AS | BROADER | CHARACTERS | ESCAPE  
  | EXPAND | FOR | FORM | FROM | FUZZY | IN | IS | LEVEL | LEVELS  
  | LIKE | NARROWER | NEAR | NOT | OF | ORDER | PARAGRAPH  
  | PARAGRAPHS | PREFERRED | PROXIMITY | RELATED | SAME  
  | SENTENCE | SENTENCES | SOUNDS | STEMMED | SYNONYM | TERM  
  | THESAURUS | TOP | WITHIN | WORDS
```

Blank page

6 Structured Search Pattern Types

The types in this family provide for the construction of structured search patterns. The types form the following hierarchy:

- FT_Any
- FT_Primary (not instantiable)
 - FT_WordOrPhrase (not instantiable)
 - FT_TextLiteral
 - FT_StemmedWord
 - FT_Phrase
 - FT_StemmedPhrase
- FT_Proxi
- FT_Soundex
- FT_Fuzzy
- FT_BroaderTerm
- FT_NarrowerTerm
- FT_Synonym
- FT_PreferredTerm
- FT_RelatedTerm
- FT_TopTerm
- FT_IsAbout
- FT_Context
- FT_ParExpr
- FT_Term
- FT_Expr
- FT_PhraseList

6.1 FT_Any Type and Routines

6.1.1 FT_Any Type

Purpose

The *FT_Any* type provides facilities for the construction of a structured search pattern that represents a multiset of *FT_WordOrPhrase* values and for testing whether at least one member of such a multiset occurs in a given *FullText* value.

Definition

```
CREATE TYPE FT_Any
  AS (
    Tokens FT_WordOrPhrase ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]
  )
  INSTANTIABLE
  NOT FINAL

  METHOD Contains
    (text FullText)
    RETURNS BOOLEAN
    LANGUAGE SQL
    DETERMINISTIC
    CONTAINS SQL
    CALLED ON NULL INPUT,

  CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_Any
    (tokens FT_WordOrPhrase ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength])
    RETURNS FT_Any
    SELF AS RESULT
    LANGUAGE SQL
    DETERMINISTIC
    CONTAINS SQL
    CALLED ON NULL INPUT
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The *FT_Any* type provides:
 - a) an attribute *Tokens*,
 - b) a method *Contains(FullText)*,
 - c) a method *FT_Any(FT_WordOrPhrase ARRAY)*.

6.1.2 Contains Method

Purpose

Search a *FullText* value for an *FT_Any*.

Definition

```

CREATE METHOD Contains(text FullText)
  RETURNS BOOLEAN
  FOR FT_Any
  BEGIN
    DECLARE result BOOLEAN;
    DECLARE lent INTEGER;
    DECLARE lena INTEGER;
    DECLARE TokArray FullText_Token ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength];

    SET TokArray = text.Tokenize();

    IF TokArray IS NULL THEN
      SET lent = CAST(NULL AS INTEGER);
    ELSE
      SET lent = CARDINALITY(TokArray);
    END IF;
    IF SELF IS NULL THEN
      SET lena = CAST(NULL AS INTEGER);
    ELSEIF SELF.Tokens IS NULL THEN
      SET lena = CAST(NULL AS INTEGER);
    ELSE SET lena = CARDINALITY(SELF.Tokens);
    END IF;

    IF lent IS NULL AND lena IS NULL THEN
      RETURN UNKNOWN;
    ELSEIF lent = 0 OR lena = 0 THEN
      SET result = FALSE;
    ELSEIF lent <> 0 AND lena IS NULL OR
      lent IS NULL AND lena <> 0 THEN
      RETURN UNKNOWN;
    ELSE SET result =
      (WITH RECURSIVE Tab2(ind, wop) AS
        (VALUES(1, SELF.Tokens[1])
         UNION
         SELECT ind + 1, SELF.Tokens[ind + 1]
         FROM Tab2
         WHERE ind < lena
        ),
      Temp(BasI) AS
        (SELECT MAX(BasI)
         FROM (VALUES(1) UNION
              SELECT
                CASE ta.wop.Contains(text)
                  WHEN FALSE THEN 1
                  WHEN TRUE THEN 3
                  ELSE 2
                END
              FROM Tab2 ta) AS TT(BasI)
        )
      SELECT ARRAY[FALSE, UNKNOWN, TRUE][BasI] FROM Temp
    );
    END IF;
    RETURN result;
  END

```


Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The method *Contains(FullText)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *FullText* item *text*.
- 2) If *SELF.Tokens* meets all of the following conditions, then it is implementation-defined whether an exception condition is raised: *SQL/MM Full-Text exception – invalid search expression*:
 - i) Every contained pattern of the form <word> or <stemmed word> specifies a stop word.
 - ii) Every contained pattern of the form <phrase> or <stemmed phrase> contains only stop words, or contains leading or trailing stop words.
- 3) *Contains(FullText)* returns:

Case:

- a) False, if either *text.Tokenize()* or *SELF.Tokens* is empty, or for every element *B* of *SELF.Tokens*
`B.Contains(text)`
is False.
- b) True, if there exists one element *B* of *SELF.Tokens*, such that
`B.Contains(text)`
is True;
- c) Otherwise, Unknown. In particular, this result is obtained if:
 - i) Any of *text* or *text.Tokenize()* is the null value, and *SELF* or *SELF.Tokens* is the null value.
 - ii) *text* or *text.Tokenize()* is the null value, but *SELF.Tokens* is a non-empty array.
 - iii) *SELF* or *SELF.Tokens* is the null value, but *text.Tokenize()* is a non-empty array.

6.1.3 FT_Any Method

Purpose

Return a specified *FT_Any* value.

Definition

```
CREATE CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_Any  
  (tokens FT_WordOrPhrase ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength])  
  RETURNS FT_Any  
  FOR FT_Any  
  RETURN SELF.Tokens(tokens)
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The method *FT_Any(FT_WordOrPhrase ARRAY)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) an array *tokens* with elements of type *FT_WordOrPhrase* which represents a set of words or terms.

6.2 FT_Primary Type and Routines

6.2.1 FT_Primary Type

Purpose

The *FT_Primary* type is the root type of a number elementary search pattern types. It provides a facility for negating any search pattern the type of which is a subtype of *FT_Primary*.

Definition

```
CREATE TYPE FT_Primary
  AS (
    NOT_tag BOOLEAN
  )
  NOT INSTANTIABLE
  NOT FINAL

  METHOD Contains(text FullText)
    RETURNS BOOLEAN
    LANGUAGE SQL
    DETERMINISTIC
    CONTAINS SQL
    CALLED ON NULL INPUT,

  METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
    RETURNS FT_Pattern
    LANGUAGE SQL
    DETERMINISTIC
    CONTAINS SQL
    CALLED ON NULL INPUT
```

Description

- 1) The *FT_Primary* type provides:
 - a) an attribute *NOT_tag*,
 - b) a method *Contains(FullText)*,
 - c) a method *StrctPattern_to_Pattern()*.
- 2) Values of *FT_Primary* cannot be created. Only values of instantiable subtypes of *FT_Primary* can be created.

6.2.2 Contains Method

Purpose

Search a *FullText* value for an *FT_Primary* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD Contains  
  (text FullText)  
  RETURNS BOOLEAN  
  FOR FT_Primary  
  RETURN TRUE
```

Description

- 1) The method *Contains(FullText)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *FullText* value *text*.
- 2) The method *Contains(FullText)* is a dummy method that will never be called since there are no *FT_Primary* values which are not values of a subtype of *FT_Primary*.

6.2.3 StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method

Purpose

Convert an *FT_Primary* value to an *FT_Pattern* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()  
  RETURNS FT_Pattern  
  FOR FT_Primary  
  BEGIN  
    DECLARE result CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength);  
  
    SET result = ' ' -- dummy result  
    RETURN CAST(result AS FT_Pattern);  
  END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxPatternLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for the character representation of an *FT_Pattern* value.

Description

- 1) The method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* has no input parameters.
- 2) The method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* is a dummy method that will never be called since there are no *FT_Primary* values which are not values of a subtype of *FT_Primary*.

6.3 FT_WordOrPhrase Type and Routines

6.3.1 FT_WordOrPhrase Type

Purpose

The *FT_WordOrPhrase* type is the root type for the types *FT_TextLiteral* and *FT_Phrase*; it is not instantiable.

Definition

```
CREATE TYPE FT_WordOrPhrase
  UNDER FT_Primary
  NOT INSTANTIABLE
  NOT FINAL

  OVERRIDING METHOD Contains
    (text FullText)
    RETURNS BOOLEAN,

  OVERRIDING METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
    RETURNS FT_Pattern,

  METHOD getWordArray()
    RETURNS FullText_Token ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]
  LANGUAGE SQL
  DETERMINISTIC
  CONTAINS SQL
  CALLED ON NULL INPUT
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The *FT_WordOrPhrase* type provides:
 - a) a method *Contains(FullText)*,
 - b) a method *StrctPattern_to_Pattern()*,
 - c) a method *getWordArray()*.
- 2) *FT_WordOrPhrase* values cannot be created. Only values of the subtypes of *FT_WordOrPhrase* can be created.

6.3.2 Contains Method

Purpose

Search a *FullText* value for an *FT_WordOrPhrase* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD Contains  
  (text FullText)  
  RETURNS BOOLEAN  
  FOR FT_WordOrPhrase  
  RETURN TRUE
```

Description

- 1) The method *Contains(FullText)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *FullText* value *text*.
- 2) The method *Contains(FullText)* is a dummy method that will never be called since there are no *FT_WordOrPhrase* values which are not values of a subtype of *FT_WordOrPhrase*.

6.3.3 StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method

Purpose

Convert an *FT_WordOrPhrase* value to an *FT_Pattern* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()  
  RETURNS FT_Pattern  
  FOR FT_WordOrPhrase  
  BEGIN  
    DECLARE result CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength);  
  
    SET result = ' ' -- dummy result  
    RETURN CAST(result AS FT_Pattern);  
  END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxPatternLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for the character representation of an *FT_Pattern* value.

Description

- 1) The method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* has no input parameters.
- 2) The method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* is a dummy method that will never be called since there are no *FT_WordOrPhrase* values which are not values of a subtype of *FT_WordOrPhrase*.

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)
6.3.4 getWordArray Method

6.3.4 getWordArray Method

Purpose

Generate an array representation while preserving ordering from an *FT_WordOrPhrase* value where each array element contains a *FullText_Token* value representing a word.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD getWordArray()  
  RETURNS FullText_Token ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]  
  FOR FT_WordOrPhrase  
  RETURN CAST(ARRAY[] AS FullText_Token ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength])
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The method *getWordArray()* has no input parameters.
- 2) The method *getWordArray()* is a dummy method that will never be called since there are no *FT_WordOrPhrase* values which are not values of a subtype of *FT_WordOrPhrase*.

6.4 FT_TextLiteral Type and Routines

6.4.1 FT_TextLiteral Type

Purpose

The *FT_TextLiteral* type provides facilities for the construction of literal search patterns and for searching of occurrences of literals in text.

Definition

```

CREATE TYPE FT_TextLiteral
  UNDER FT_WordOrPhrase
  AS (
    LitPart FullText_Token,
    Language CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxLanguageLength),
    EscapeSpec CHARACTER(1)
  )
  INSTANTIABLE
  NOT FINAL

  OVERRIDING METHOD Contains
    (text FullText)
    RETURNS BOOLEAN,

  OVERRIDING METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
    RETURNS FT_Pattern,

  METHOD matches
    (tok FullText_Token)
    RETURNS BOOLEAN
  LANGUAGE SQL
  DETERMINISTIC
  CONTAINS SQL
  CALLED ON NULL INPUT,

  METHOD Tokenize()
    RETURNS FT_TextLiteral
  LANGUAGE SQL
  DETERMINISTIC
  CONTAINS SQL
  CALLED ON NULL INPUT,

  CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_TextLiteral
    (w FullText_Token,
     Language CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxLanguageLength))
    RETURNS FT_TextLiteral
  SELF AS RESULT
  LANGUAGE SQL
  DETERMINISTIC
  CONTAINS SQL
  CALLED ON NULL INPUT,

  CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_TextLiteral
    (w FullText_Token
     Language CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxLanguageLength),
     EscapeChar CHARACTER(1))
    RETURNS FT_TextLiteral
  SELF AS RESULT
  LANGUAGE SQL
  DETERMINISTIC
  CONTAINS SQL
  CALLED ON NULL INPUT,

```

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)
6.4.1 FT_TextLiteral Type

OVERRIDING METHOD `getWordArray()`
RETURNS `FullText_Token` ARRAY[*FT_MaxArrayLength*]

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.
- 2) *FT_MaxLanguageLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a language specification.

Description

- 1) The *FT_TextLiteral* type provides:
 - a) an attribute *LitPart*,
 - b) an attribute *Language*,
 - c) an attribute *EscapeSpec*,
 - d) a method *Contains(FullText)*,
 - e) a method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*,
 - f) a method *matches(FullText_Token)*,
 - g) a method *Tokenize()*,
 - h) a method *getWordArray()*,
 - i) a method *FT_TextLiteral(FullText_Token, CHARACTER VARYING)* and a method *FT_TextLiteral(FullText_Token, CHARACTER VARYING, CHARACTER)*,
 - j) a function *EliminateDQS(FullText_Token)*,
 - k) a function *InsertDQS(FullText_Token)*.

6.4.2 Contains Method

Purpose

Search a *FullText* value for an *FT_TextLiteral* value.

Definition

```

CREATE METHOD Contains
  (text FullText)
  RETURNS BOOLEAN
  FOR FT_TextLiteral
  BEGIN
    DECLARE result BOOLEAN;

    IF text.Tokenize() IS NULL THEN
      RETURN UNKNOWN;
    END IF;
    IF CARDINALITY(text.Tokenize()) = 0 THEN
      SET result = FALSE;
    ELSEIF CARDINALITY(SELF.Tokenize()) = 0 THEN
      --
      -- !! See Description
      --
    ELSE
      SET result = (WITH RECURSIVE tempTab(pos, token) AS
        (VALUES(1, text.Tokenize())[1])
         UNION
         SELECT tt.pos + 1, text.Tokenize()[tt.pos + 1]
         FROM   tempTab tt
         WHERE  tt.pos < CARDINALITY(text.Tokenize())
        ),
        Temp(BasI) AS
        (SELECT MAX(BasI)
         FROM (VALUES(1) UNION
                SELECT
                  CASE SELF.Tokenize()[1].matches(tt.token)
                    WHEN FALSE THEN 1
                    WHEN TRUE  THEN 3
                    ELSE           2
                  END
                FROM TempTab tt) AS TT(BasI)
        )
        SELECT ARRAY[FALSE, UNKNOWN, TRUE][BasI] FROM Temp
        );
    END IF;
    RETURN (SELF.NOT_tag = result);
  END

```

Description

- 1) The method *Contains(FullText)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *FullText* item *text*.
- 2) Let *TL* be the result of the invocation of *text.Tokenize()* and *TLE* be elements of *TL*, normalized in an implementation-defined way, and with leading and trailing blanks removed. Let *T* be the result of the invocation of *SELF.Tokenize()* and if the cardinality of *T* is one then let *TE* be the first element of *T*, normalized in an implementation-defined way and with leading and trailing blanks removed. If *SELF.EscapeSpec* is the null value, let *TT* be *TE*; otherwise, let *TT* be *TE ESCAPE SELF.EscapeSpec*.

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)
6.4.2 Contains Method

- a) Case:
- i) If the cardinality of *T* is zero then it is implementation-defined whether
 - A) to let *R* be False, or
 - B) an exception condition is raised: *SQL/MM Full-Text exception – effectively empty search expression*.
 - ii) If *TL* is empty, then let *R* be False.
 - iii) If
 - $$TLE \text{ NOT LIKE } TT$$
is True for every element *TLE* of *TL*, with leading and trailing blanks removed from *TLE*, then let *R* be False.
 - iv) If *TL* contains at least one element *TLE*, with leading and trailing blanks removed, such that
 - $$TLE \text{ LIKE } TT$$
is True, then let *R* be True.
 - vi) Otherwise, let *R* be Unknown.
- b) *Contains(FullText)* returns:
- Case:
- i) Unknown, if *SELF.NOT_tag* is the null value.
 - ii) *R*, if *SELF.NOT_tag* is True.
 - iii) Otherwise, NOT *R*.

6.4.3 StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method

Purpose

Convert an *FT_TextLiteral* value to an *FT_Pattern* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()  
  RETURNS FT_Pattern  
  FOR FT_TextLiteral  
  BEGIN  
    DECLARE result CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength);  
  
    SET result = SELF.Language || ' '  
      || TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM InsertDQS(SELF.LitPart))  
      || CASE WHEN SELF.EscapeSpec IS NULL THEN  
          ' "'  
        ELSE  
          '" ESCAPE "' || SELF.EscapeSpec || '''  
        END;  
    IF SELF.NOT_tag IS UNKNOWN THEN  
      SET result = NULL;  
    ELSEIF NOT SELF.NOT_tag THEN  
      SET result = 'NOT ' || result;  
    END IF;  
    RETURN CAST(result AS FT_Pattern);  
  END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxPatternLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for the character representation of an *FT_Pattern* value.

Description

- 1) The method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* has no input parameters.
- 2) *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* converts an *FT_TextLiteral* value into an *FT_Pattern* of the form <word> or of the form NOT <word>.
- 3) In the course of initializing an *FT_Pattern* value, <double quote>s appearing in *SELF.LitPart* are taken care of by the function *InsertDQS(FullText_Token)*. *InsertDQS(FullText_Token)* replaces each <double quote> in a token by a <doublequote symbol>.
- 4) If *SELF* is the null value or *SELF.NOT_tag* is *Unknown*, then the result is the null value.

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)
6.4.4 matches Method

6.4.4 matches Method

Purpose

Compare a *FullText_Token* value with an *FT_TextLiteral* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD matches
  (tok FullText_Token)
  RETURNS BOOLEAN
  FOR FT_TextLiteral
  RETURN (
    CASE WHEN SELF.EscapeSpec IS NULL THEN
      TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM tok) LIKE
        TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM SELF.LitPart)
    ELSE
      TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM tok) LIKE
        TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM SELF.LitPart) ESCAPE SELF.EscapeSpec
    END
  )
```

Description

- 1) The method *matches(FullText_Token)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *FullText_Token* item *tok*.
- 2) *matches(FullText_Token)* compares *tok* and *SELF* using the LIKE operator to return a BOOLEAN value.

6.4.5 Tokenize Method

Purpose

Normalize the *LitPart* attribute of an *FT_TextLiteral* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD Tokenize()  
  RETURNS FT_TextLiteral  
  FOR FT_TextLiteral  
  BEGIN  
    --  
    -- !! See Description  
    --  
  END
```

Description

- 1) The method *Tokenize()* has no input parameters.
- 2) *Tokenize()* normalizes *SELF.LitPart* in an implementation-defined way. Any wild card characters in *SELF.LitPart* are preserved in the result of *Tokenize()*. In addition, it is implementation-defined whether stop words are effectively included in the result, and if so, how they are represented. However, a conforming implementation must treat stop words in this method and in the *FullText* method *Tokenize()* in the same way.

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)
6.4.6 `getWordArray` Method

6.4.6 `getWordArray` Method

Purpose

Return a one element *FullText_Token* array from an *FT_TextLiteral* value representing a single word.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD getWordArray()  
  RETURNS FullText_Token ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]  
  FOR FT_TextLiteral  
  RETURN ARRAY[TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM SELF.LitPart)]
```

Definitional Rules

1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The method `getWordArray()` has no input parameters.
- 2) The method `getWordArray()` returns *SELF.LitPart* as a one element *FullText_Token* array.

6.4.7 FT_TextLiteral Methods

Purpose

Return a specified *FT_TextLiteral* value.

Definition

```
CREATE CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_TextLiteral
  (w FullText_Token,
   Language CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxLanguageLength))
RETURNS FT_TextLiteral
FOR FT_TextLiteral
RETURN SELF.LitPart(EliminateDQS(w)).
  Language(Language).NOT_tag(TRUE)

CREATE CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_TextLiteral
  (w FullText_Token,
   Language CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxLanguageLength),
   EscapeChar CHARACTER(1))
RETURNS FT_TextLiteral
FOR FT_TextLiteral
RETURN NEW FT_TextLiteral(w, Language).EscapeSpec(EscapeChar)
```

Description

- 1) The method *FT_TextLiteral(FullText_Token, CHARACTER VARYING)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *FullText_Token* value *w*,
 - b) a CHARACTER VARYING value *Language*.
- 2) The method *FT_TextLiteral(FullText_Token, CHARACTER VARYING, CHARACTER)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *FullText_Token* value *w*,
 - b) a CHARACTER VARYING value *Language*,
 - c) a CHARACTER value *EscapeChar*.
- 3) In the process of initializing an *FT_TextLiteral* value, the appearance of <doublequote symbol>s in the token *w* is taken care of by the function *EliminateDQS(FullText_Token)*. *EliminateDQS(FullText_Token)* replaces each <doublequote symbol> in a token by a <double quote>.

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)
6.4.8 EliminateDQS Function

6.4.8 EliminateDQS Function

Purpose

Eliminate a double quote symbol from a *FullText_Token* value.

Definition

```
CREATE FUNCTION EliminateDQS
  (w FullText_Token)
  RETURNS FullText_Token
  LANGUAGE SQL
  DETERMINISTIC
  CONTAINS SQL
  CALLED ON NULL INPUT
  BEGIN
    --
    -- !! See Description
    --
  END
```

Description

- 1) The function *EliminateDQS(FullText_Token)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *FullText_Token* value *w*.
- 2) *EliminateDQS(FullText_Token)* replaces each <doublequote symbol> in *w* by a <double quote>.

6.4.9 InsertDQS Function

Purpose

Insert a double quote symbol in a *FullText_Token* value.

Definition

```
CREATE FUNCTION InsertDQS
  (w FullText_Token)
  RETURNS CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength)
  LANGUAGE SQL
  DETERMINISTIC
  CONTAINS SQL
  CALLED ON NULL INPUT
  BEGIN
    --
    -- !! See Description
    --
  END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxPatternLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for the character representation of an *FT_Pattern* value.

Description

- 1) The function *InsertDQS(FullText_Token)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *FullText_Token* value *w*.
- 2) *InsertDQS(FullText_Token)* replaces each <double quote> in a token by a <doublequote symbol>.

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)
6.5.1 FT_StemmedWord Type

6.5 FT_StemmedWord Type and Routines

6.5.1 FT_StemmedWord Type

Purpose

The *FT_StemmedWord* type provides facilities for the construction of stemmed word search patterns and for searching of occurrences of stemmed words in text.

Definition

```
CREATE TYPE FT_StemmedWord
  UNDER FT_TextLiteral
  INSTANTIABLE
  NOT FINAL

  OVERRIDING METHOD Contains
    (text FullText)
    RETURNS BOOLEAN,

  OVERRIDING METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
    RETURNS FT_Pattern,

  METHOD TokenizeAndStem()
    RETURNS FT_TextLiteral
  LANGUAGE SQL
  DETERMINISTIC
  CONTAINS SQL
  CALLED ON NULL INPUT,

  CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_StemmedWord
    (sw FullText_Token,
     Language CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxLanguageLength))
    RETURNS FT_StemmedWord
  SELF AS RESULT
  LANGUAGE SQL
  DETERMINISTIC
  CONTAINS SQL
  CALLED ON NULL INPUT

  CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_StemmedWord
    (sw FullText_Token,
     Language CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxLanguageLength),
     EscapeChar CHARACTER(1))
    RETURNS FT_StemmedWord
  SELF AS RESULT
  LANGUAGE SQL
  DETERMINISTIC
  CONTAINS SQL
  CALLED ON NULL INPUT
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxLanguageLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a language specification.

Description

- 1) The *FT_StemmedWord* type provides:
 - a) a method *Contains(FullText)*,

- b) a method *StrctiPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*,
- c) a method *TokenizeAndStem()*,
- d) a method *FT_StemmedWord(FullText_Token, CHARACTER VARYING)* and a method *FT_StemmedWord(FullText_Token, CHARACTER VARYING, CHARACTER)*.

6.5.2 Contains Method

Purpose

Search a *FullText* value for an *FT_StemmedWord* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD Contains
  (text FullText)
  RETURNS BOOLEAN
  FOR FT_StemmedWord
  BEGIN
    DECLARE result BOOLEAN;

    IF text.TokenizeAndStem() IS NULL THEN
      RETURN UNKNOWN;
    END IF;
    IF CARDINALITY(text.TokenizeAndStem()) = 0 THEN
      SET result = FALSE;
    ELSEIF CARDINALITY(SELF.Tokenize()) = 0 THEN
      --
      -- !! See Description
      --
    ELSE
      SET result = (WITH RECURSIVE tempTab(pos, token) AS
        (VALUES(1, text.TokenizeAndStem()[1])
         UNION
         SELECT tt.pos + 1, text.TokenizeAndStem()[tt.pos + 1]
         FROM   tempTab tt
         WHERE  tt.pos < CARDINALITY(text.TokenizeAndStem())
        ),
        Temp(BasI) AS
        (SELECT MAX(BasI)
         FROM (VALUES(1) UNION
              SELECT
                CASE SELF.TokenizeAndStem()[1].matches(tt.token)
                 WHEN FALSE THEN 1
                 WHEN TRUE  THEN 3
                 ELSE           2
                END
              FROM TempTab tt) AS TT(BasI)
         )
        SELECT ARRAY[FALSE, UNKNOWN, TRUE][BasI] FROM Temp
        );
      END IF;
      RETURN (SELF.NOT_tag = result);
    END
```

Description

- 1) The method *Contains(FullText)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *FullText* item *text*.
- 2) Let *TL* be the result of the invocation of *text.TokenizeAndStem()*. Let *TLE* be elements of *TL*, normalized and reduced to stems in an implementation-defined way, and with leading and trailing blanks removed. Let *T* be the result of the invocation of *SELF.Tokenize()* and if the cardinality of *T* is one then let *TE* be the first element of *T*, normalized and reduced to stems in an implementation-defined way, and with leading and trailing blanks removed. If *SELF.EscapeSpec* is the null value, let *TT* be *TE*; otherwise, let *TT* be *TE ESCAPE SELF.EscapeSpec*.

- a) Case:
- i) If the cardinality of T is zero then it is implementation-defined whether
 - A) to let R be False, or
 - B) an exception condition is raised: *SQL/MM Full-Text exception – effectively empty search expression*.
 - ii) If TL is empty, then let R be False.
 - iii) If
$$TLE \text{ NOT LIKE } TT$$
is True for every element TLE of TL , then let R be False.
 - iv) If TL contains at least one element TLE , such that
$$TLE \text{ LIKE } TT$$
is True, then let R be True.
 - v) Otherwise, let R be Unknown.
- b) *Contains(FullText)* returns:
- Case:
- i) Unknown, if *SELF.NOT_tag* is the null value.
 - ii) R , if *SELF.NOT_tag* is True.
 - iii) Otherwise, NOT R .

6.5.3 StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method

Purpose

Convert an *FT_StemmedWord* value to an *FT_Pattern* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
  RETURNS FT_Pattern
  FOR FT_StemmedWord
  BEGIN
    DECLARE result CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength);

    SET result = 'STEMMED FORM OF' || SELF.Language
      || ' "' || TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM InsertDQS(SELF.LitPart))
      || CASE WHEN SELF.EscapeSpec IS NULL THEN
        '""'
      ELSE
        '"' ESCAPE '"' || SELF.EscapeSpec || '"'
      END;
    IF SELF.NOT_tag IS UNKNOWN THEN
      SET result = NULL;
    ELSEIF NOT SELF.NOT_tag THEN
      SET result = 'NOT ' || result;
    END IF;
    RETURN CAST(result AS FT_Pattern);
  END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxPatternLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for the character representation of an *FT_Pattern* value.

Description

- 1) The method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern(FT_StemmedWord)* has no input parameters.
- 2) *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* converts an *FT_StemmedWord* value into an *FT_Pattern* value of the form <stemmed word> or of the form NOT <stemmed word>.
- 3) In the course of initializing an *FT_Pattern* value, <double quote>s appearing in *SELF.LitPart* are taken care of by the function *InsertDQS(FullText_Token)*. *InsertDQS(FullText_Token)* replaces each <double quote> in a token by a <doublequote symbol>.
- 4) If *SELF* is the null value or *SELF.NOT_tag* is *Unknown*, then the result is the null value.

6.5.4 TokenizeAndStem Method

Purpose

Normalize and stem-reduce the *LitPart* attribute of an *FT_StemmedWord* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD TokenizeAndStem()  
  RETURNS FT_TextLiteral ARRAY[1]  
  FOR FT_StemmedWord  
  BEGIN  
    --  
    -- !! See Description  
    --  
  END
```

Description

- 1) The method *TokenizeAndStem()* has no input parameters.
- 2) *TokenizeAndStem()* normalizes and stem-reduces *SELF.LitPart* in an implementation-defined way. In addition, it is implementation-defined whether stop words are effectively included in the result, and if so, how they are represented. However, a conforming implementation must treat stop words in this method and in the *FullText* method *TokenizeAndStem()* in the same way.

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)
6.5.5 FT_StemmedWord Methods

6.5.5 FT_StemmedWord Methods

Purpose

Return a specified *FT_StemmedWord* value.

Definition

```
CREATE CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_StemmedWord
  (sw FullText_Token,
   Language CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxLanguageLength))
  RETURNS FT_StemmedWord
  FOR FT_StemmedWord
  RETURN SELF.LitPart(EliminateDQS(sw)).
    Language(Language).NOT_Tag(TRUE)

CREATE CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_StemmedWord
  (sw FullText_Token,
   Language CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxLanguageLength),
   EscapeChar CHARACTER(1))
  RETURNS FT_StemmedWord
  FOR FT_StemmedWord
  RETURN NEW FT_StemmedWord(sw, Language).EscapeSpec(EscapeChar)
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxLanguageLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a language specification.

Description

- 1) The method *FT_StemmedWord(FullText_Token, CHARACTER VARYING)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *FullText_Token* value *sw*,
 - b) a CHARACTER VARYING value *Language*.
- 2) The method *FT_StemmedWord(FullText_Token, CHARACTER VARYING, CHARACTER)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *FullText_Token* value *sw*,
 - b) a CHARACTER VARYING value *Language*,
 - c) a CHARACTER value *EscapeChar*.
- 3) In the process of initializing an *FT_StemmedWord* value, the appearance of <doublequote symbol>s in the token *sw* is taken care of by the function *EliminateDQS(FullText_Token)*. *EliminateDQS(FullText_Token)* replaces each <doublequote symbol> in a token by a <double quote>.

6.6 FT_Phrase Type and Routines

6.6.1 FT_Phrase Type

Purpose

The *FT_Phrase* type provides for the construction of phrase search patterns, and for searching of occurrences of the phrases in text.

Definition

```
CREATE TYPE FT_Phrase
  UNDER FT_WordOrPhrase
  AS (
    PhrasePart FullText_Token ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength],
    Language CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxLanguageLength),
    EscapeSpec CHARACTER(1)
  )
  INSTANTIABLE
  NOT FINAL

  OVERRIDING METHOD Contains
    (text FullText)
    RETURNS BOOLEAN,

  OVERRIDING METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
    RETURNS FT_Pattern,

  OVERRIDING METHOD getWordArray()
    RETURNS FullText_Token ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength],

  METHOD TokenizePosition()
    RETURNS FT_TokenPosition ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]
  LANGUAGE SQL
  DETERMINISTIC
  CONTAINS SQL
  CALLED ON NULL INPUT,

  CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_Phrase
    (w1 FullText_Token ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength],
     Language CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxLanguageLength))
    RETURNS FT_Phrase
  SELF AS RESULT
  LANGUAGE SQL
  DETERMINISTIC
  CONTAINS SQL
  CALLED ON NULL INPUT,

  CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_Phrase
    (w1 FullText_Token ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength],
     Language CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxLanguageLength),
     EscapeChar CHARACTER(1))
    RETURNS FT_Phrase
  SELF AS RESULT
  LANGUAGE SQL
  DETERMINISTIC
  CONTAINS SQL
  CALLED ON NULL INPUT
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

6.6.1 FT_Phrase Type

- 2) *FT_MaxLanguageLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a language specification.

Description

- 1) The *FT_Phrase* type provides:
- a) an attribute *PhrasePart*,
 - b) an attribute *Language*,
 - c) an attribute *EscapeSpec*,
 - e) a method *Contains(FullText)*,
 - f) a method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*,
 - g) a method *getWordArray()*,
 - h) a method *TokenizePosition()*,
 - i) a method *FT_Phrase(FullText_Token ARRAY, CHARACTER VARYING)* and a method *FT_Phrase(FullText_Token ARRAY, CHARACTER VARYING, CHARACTER)*,
 - j) a function *matches(FT_TokenPosition ARRAY, INTEGER, INTEGER, FT_TokenPosition ARRAY, INTEGER, INTEGER, CHARACTER, CHARACTER VARYING)*,
 - k) a function *prune(FT_TokenPosition ARRAY, INTEGER, INTEGER)*.
- 2) An *FT_Phrase* value denotes an array of *FullText_Token* tokens which in turn represents a sequence of words. The array may be empty or the null value.

Tokens may contain wild card characters '%' and '_'. The '%' wild card denotes an arbitrary number (zero or more) of characters which are admissible within a token. An '_' wild card denotes one arbitrary character out of the set of characters which are admissible within a token.

A token may be the null value.

NOTE 16 *FT_Phrase* values are intentionally more general than <phrase>s which contain at least two <word representation>s, none of which may be a NULL string.

- 3) If a token exclusively consists of '%' wild card characters, then it denotes an optional word.

6.6.2 Contains Method

Purpose

Search a *FullText* value for an *FT_Phrase* value.

Definition

```

CREATE METHOD Contains
  (text FullText)
  RETURNS BOOLEAN
  FOR FT_Phrase
  BEGIN
    DECLARE tokarray FT_TokenPosition ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength];
    DECLARE result BOOLEAN;
    DECLARE lent INTEGER;
    DECLARE tlen INTEGER;
    DECLARE lenp INTEGER;
    DECLARE plen INTEGER;
    DECLARE canonicphr FT_TokenPosition ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength];
    DECLARE nmsk INTEGER;
    DECLARE i    INTEGER;

    SET tokarray = text.TokenizePosition('WORDS');
    IF tokarray IS NULL THEN
      RETURN UNKNOWN;
    END IF;
    SET lent = CARDINALITY(tokarray);
    SET canonicphr = SELF.TokenizePosition();
    IF (SELF IS NULL OR canonicphr IS NULL) AND
        lent <> 0 THEN
      RETURN UNKNOWN;
    END IF;
    SET lenp = CARDINALITY(canonicphr);
    SET nmsk = 0;
    SET i    = 1;
    -----
    -- find tokens representing an optional word
    -----
    L1: WHILE (i <= lenp) DO
      IF canonicphr[i].token SIMILAR '$%+' ESCAPE '$' THEN
        SET nmsk = nmsk + 1;
      END IF;
      SET i = i + 1;
    END WHILE L1;
    IF lent = 0 THEN
      RETURN (FALSE = SELF.NOT_tag);
    END IF;
    IF lenp = 0 THEN
      --
      -- !! See Description
      --
    END IF;

    SET tlen = tokarray[lent].position;
    SET plen = canonicphr[lenp].position;

    IF tlen < plen - nmsk THEN
      RETURN (FALSE = SELF.NOT_tag);
    END IF;
    IF plen - nmsk = 0 THEN
      RETURN (TRUE = SELF.NOT_tag);
    END IF;
  
```

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)

6.6.2 Contains Method

```
SET result = (WITH RECURSIVE textrange(i) AS
  (VALUES (1)
   UNION
   SELECT i + 1
   FROM textrange
   WHERE i < lent
  ),
  Temp(BasI) AS
  (SELECT MAX(BasI)
   FROM (VALUES(1) UNION
        SELECT
          CASE tokarray[i].position <=
            tlen + 1 - (plen - nmsk) AND
            matches(tokarray, i, lent, canonicphr, 1, lenp,
              SELF.EscapeSpec, SELF.Language)
          WHEN FALSE THEN 1
          WHEN TRUE THEN 3
          ELSE 2
        END
        FROM textrange AS tr(i)) AS TT(BasI)
  )
  SELECT ARRAY[FALSE, UNKNOWN, TRUE][BasI] FROM Temp
);
RETURN (SELF.NOT_tag = result);
END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The method *Contains(FullText)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *FullText* argument *text*.
- 2) If the first element of *SELF.PhrasePart* or the last element of *SELF.PhrasePart* is a stop word, or all elements of *SELF.PhrasePart* are stop words, then it is implementation-defined whether an exception condition is raised: *SQL/MM Full-Text exception – invalid search expression*.
- 3) Let *TL* be the result of the invocation of *text.TokenizePosition('WORDS')* and *TLE* be elements of *TL*. Every *TLE* represents some word of *text* in an implementation-defined normalized way, with leading and trailing blanks removed. It is implementation-defined whether no stop word of *text*, all stop words of *text*, or all stop words of *text* except for leading and trailing stop words are represented by some *TLE*. If stop words are included, then it is implementation-defined how they are effectively represented, provided their representation is such that the result of comparing any two stop words is *True*.
- 4) Let *TPL* be the result of *SELF.TokenizePosition()* and let *TPLE* be the elements of *TPL*. Every *TPLE* represents some word of *SELF.PhrasePart* in an implementation-defined normalized way with leading and trailing blanks removed. It is implementation-defined whether no stop word of *SELF.PhrasePart*, all stop words of *SELF.PhrasePart*, or all stop words of *SELF.PhrasePart* except for leading and trailing stop words are represented by some *TPLE* in an implementation-defined way, provided stop word are dealt with in the same fashion by the *TokenizePosition* methods of the *FullText* and *FT_Phrase* types.
- 5) Case:
 - a) If *TL* is empty or if *TLE.position* of the last *TLE* is less than *TPLE.position* of the last *TPLE*, not counting the *TPLEs* representing optional words, then let *R* be *False*.

- b) If either *SELF*, *SELF.PhrasePart* or *text* is the null value, then let *R* be Unknown.
 - c) If the cardinality of *TPL* is zero then it is implementation-defined whether
 - i) to let *R* be False, or
 - ii) an exception condition is raised: *SQL/MM Full-Text exception – effectively empty search expression*.
 - d) If *TPL* represents optional words only, then let *R* be True.
 - e) Otherwise:
 - i) Let *n* be the number of elements of *TPL*. Let *now* be the number of optional words. Let *STS* be a set of *m* arrays of *FT_TokenPosition* values where *m* is 2 to the power of *n* such that:
 - A) *TPL* is an element of *STS*.
 - B) Every other element of *STS* (if *m* > 1 (one)) is obtained from *TPL* as follows:
 - 1) Remove one of the possible combinations of *TPLEs* representing optional words.
 - 2) For each removed *TPLE*, for each subsequent *TPLE*, say *t*, reduce the value *t.position* by 1 (one).
 - C) No two elements of *STS* are equal.
 - ii) Let *S1* be a sequence of *L* *TLEs* of *TL* and *S2* an element of *STS* of the same length *L*. For *j* ranging from 1 to *L*, let *S1_j* and *S2_j* be elements of *S1* and *S2*, respectively. If *SELF.EscapeSpec* is the null value, then let *TT* be *S2_j.token*. Otherwise, let *TT* be *S2_j.token ESCAPE SELF.EscapeSpec*.
 - iii) Case:
 - A) If there exists some *S1* and some *S2* such that
$$S1_j \text{ LIKE } TT$$
is True for every *j*, then let *R* be True.
 - B) If for every possible pair (*S1*, *S2*)
$$S1_j \text{ LIKE } TT$$
is False for at least one *j*, then let *R* be False.
 - C) Otherwise, let *R* be Unknown.
- 6) *Contains(FullText)* returns:
- Case:
- a) Unknown, if *NOT_tag* is the null value.
 - b) NOT *R*, if *NOT_tag* is False.
 - c) Otherwise, *R*.

6.6.3 StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method

Purpose

Convert an *FT_Phrase* value to an *FT_Pattern* value.

Definition

```

CREATE METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
  RETURNS FT_Pattern
  FOR FT_Phrase
  BEGIN
    DECLARE result CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength);
    DECLARE len INTEGER;
    DECLARE i INTEGER;

    IF SELF.PhrasePart IS NULL THEN
      RETURN CAST(NULL AS FT_Pattern);
    END IF;
    SET i = 1;
    SET len = CARDINALITY(SELF.PhrasePart);
    SET result = SELF.Language || '';
    WHILE (i <= len) DO
      SET result = result
        || InsertDQS(SELF.PhrasePart[i])
        || ' ';
      SET i = i + 1;
    END WHILE;

    SET result = TRIM(TRAILING ' ' FROM result)
      || CASE WHEN SELF.EscapeSpec IS NULL THEN
          ''
        ELSE
          '" ESCAPE "' || SELF.EscapeSpec || '';
        END

    IF SELF.NOT_tag IS UNKNOWN THEN
      SET result = NULL;
    ELSEIF NOT SELF.NOT_tag THEN
      SET result = 'NOT ' || result;
    END IF;
    RETURN CAST(result AS FT_Pattern);
  END

```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxPatternLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for the character representation of an *FT_Pattern* value.

Description

- 1) The method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* has no input parameters.
- 2) *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* returns an *FT_Pattern* value of the form <phrase> or the form NOT <phrase>.
- 3) If *SELF* or *SELF.PhrasePart* is the null value or *SELF.NOT_tag* is *Unknown*, then the result is the null value.

6.6.4 getWordArray Method

Purpose

Return a *FullText_Token* array from an *FT_Phrase* value representing a term consisting of a sequence of words (phrases).

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD getWordArray()  
  RETURNS FullText_Token ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]  
  FOR FT_Phrase  
  BEGIN  
    DECLARE ret FullText_Token ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength];  
    DECLARE len INTEGER;  
    DECLARE i    INTEGER;  
  
    SET len = CARDINALITY(SELF.PhrasePart);  
    SET i   = 1;  
    SET ret = CAST(ARRAY[] AS  
      FullText_Token ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]);  
    L1: WHILE (i <= len) DO  
      SET ret = ret ||  
        ARRAY[TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM SELF.PhrasePart[i])];  
      SET i = i + 1;  
    END WHILE L1;  
    RETURN ret;  
  END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The method *getWordArray()* has no input parameters.
- 2) The method *getWordArray()* returns *SELF.PhrasePart* as a *FullText_Token* array such that the *i*-th array element corresponds to the *i*-th element of *SELF.PhrasePart*. Leading and trailing blanks are removed from the array elements.

6.6.5 TokenizePosition Method

Purpose

Normalize the *PhrasePart* attribute of an *FT_Phrase* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD TokenizePosition()  
  RETURNS FT_TokenPosition ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]  
  FOR FT_Phrase  
  BEGIN  
    --  
    -- !! See Description  
    --  
  END
```

Description

- 1) The method *TokenizePosition()* has no input parameters.
- 2) *TokenizePosition()* normalizes *SELF.PhrasePart* in an implementation-defined way. Any wild card characters in *SELF.PhrasePart* are preserved in the result of *TokenizePosition()* and *SELF.EscapeSpec* is used as the <escape representation character>. In addition, it is implementation-defined whether stop words are effectively included in the result, and if so, how they are represented. However, a conforming implementation must treat stop words in this method and in the *FullText* method *TokenizePosition(FullText_Token)* in the same way.

6.6.6 FT_Phase Methods

Purpose

Return a specified *FT_Phase* value.

Definition

```
CREATE CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_Phase
  (w1 FullText_Token ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength],
   Language CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxLanguageLength))
  RETURNS FT_Phase
  FOR FT_Phase
  BEGIN
    DECLARE i INTEGER;

    IF w1 IS NULL THEN
      RETURN SELF;
    END IF;
    SET SELF.Language = Language;
    SET SELF.NOT_tag = TRUE;
    SET SELF.PhasePart =
      CAST(ARRAY[] AS FullText_Token ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]);
    -- This method expects a list of FullText tokens
    -- where <doublequote symbol>s have not been
    -- eliminated yet. Therefore, tokens in w1 may contain
    -- <doublequote symbol>s that have to be turned into
    -- <double quote>s
    SET i = 0;
    L1: WHILE (i < CARDINALITY(w1)) DO
      SET SELF.PhasePart = SELF.PhasePart
        || ARRAY[EliminateDQS(w1[i + 1])];
      SET i = i + 1;
    END WHILE L1;
    RETURN SELF;
  END

CREATE CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_Phase
  (w1 FullText_Token ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength],
   Language CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxLanguageLength),
   EscapeChar CHARACTER(1))
  RETURNS FT_Phase
  FOR FT_Phase
  RETURN NEW FT_Phase(w1, Language).EscapeSpec(EscapeChar)
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The method *FT_Phase(FullText_Token ARRAY, CHARACTER VARYING)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) an array *w1* of *FullText_Tokens*, representing a sequence of words,
 - b) a CHARACTER VARYING value *Language*.
- 2) The method *FT_Phase(FullText_Token ARRAY, CHARACTER VARYING, CHARACTER)* takes the following input parameters:

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)
6.6.6 FT_Phrase Methods

- a) an array *wl* of *FullText_Tokens*, representing a sequence of words,
- b) a CHARACTER VARYING value *Language*,
- c) a CHARACTER(1) value *EscapeChar*.

6.6.7 matches Function

Purpose

Compare two *FT_TokenPosition* array values.

Definition

```

CREATE FUNCTION matches
  (canonictext FT_TokenPosition ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength],
   post       INTEGER,
   lent       INTEGER,
   canonicphr FT_TokenPosition ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength],
   posp       INTEGER,
   lenp       INTEGER
   EscapeChar CHARACTER(1),
   Language   CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxLanguageLength))=
RETURNS BOOLEAN
LANGUAGE SQL
DETERMINISTIC
CONTAINS SQL
CALLED ON NULL INPUT
STATIC DISPATCH
BEGIN
  RETURN
  CASE
    -- pattern exhausted, match found
    WHEN (posp > lenp) THEN
      TRUE
    -- text to be tested exhausted, no match found
    WHEN (post + posp - 1 > lent) THEN
      FALSE
    ELSE -- test successful so far; continue
      CASE
        WHEN canonicphr[posp].token NOT SIMILAR '$%+'
          ESCAPE '$' THEN
          canonictext[post+posp-1].position -
            canonictext[post].position =
            canonicphr[posp].position -
            canonicphr[1].position
        AND
          NEW FT_TextLiteral(canonicphr[posp].token,
            Language,EscapeChar).
            matches(canonictext[post+posp-1].token)
        AND
          matches(canonictext, post, lent, canonicphr,
            posp+1, lenp, EscapeChar, Language)
        ELSE
          matches(canonictext, post, lent,
            prune(canonicphr, posp, lenp),
            posp, lenp-1, EscapeChar, Language)
        OR
          matches(canonictext, post, lent, canonicphr,
            posp+1, lenp, EscapeChar, Language)
      END
    END
  END
END

```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

6.6.7 matches Function

- 2) *FT_MaxLanguageLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a language specification.

Description

- 1) The function *matches*(*FT_TokenPosition* ARRAY, INTEGER, INTEGER, *FT_TokenPosition* ARRAY, INTEGER, INTEGER, CHARACTER, CHARACTER VARYING) takes the following input parameters:
- a) an array *canonictext* of *FT_TokenPosition* items, representing a sequence of words.
 - b) an INTEGER value *post*,
 - c) an INTEGER value *lent*,
 - d) an array *canonicphr* of *FT_TokenPosition* items, representing a sequence of words,
 - e) an INTEGER value *posp*,
 - f) an INTEGER value *lenp*,
 - g) a CHARACTER value *EscapeChar*,
 - h) a CHARACTER VARYING value *Language*.

6.6.8 prune Function

Purpose

Return an *FT_TokenPosition* array from an *FT_TokenPosition* array by removing an indicated element and adjusting the position value of subsequent elements.

Definition

```
CREATE FUNCTION prune
  (canonicphr FT_TokenPosition ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength],
   posp INTEGER, lenp INTEGER)
RETURNS FT_TokenPosition ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]
LANGUAGE SQL
DETERMINISTIC
CONTAINS SQL
CALLED ON NULL INPUT
STATIC DISPATCH
BEGIN
  DECLARE result FT_TokenPosition ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength];
  DECLARE i      INTEGER;

  SET i = 1;

  L1: WHILE (i < posp) DO
    SET result[i] = canonicphr[i];
    SET i = i + 1;
  END WHILE L1;

  L2: WHILE (i < lenp) DO
    SET result[i] = canonicphr[i+1];
    SET result[i] = result[i].position(result[i].position - 1);
    SET i = i + 1;
  END WHILE L2;

  RETURN result;
END
```

Definitional Rules

1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The function *prune(FT_TokenPosition ARRAY, INTEGER, INTEGER)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) an array *canonicphr* of *FT_TokenPosition* values representing a sequence of words,
 - b) an INTEGER value *posp* which points to the element to be removed,
 - c) an INTEGER value *lenp* which is the cardinality of *canonicphr*.
- 2) From *canonicphr*, the function *prune(FT_TokenPosition ARRAY, INTEGER, INTEGER)* removes the element at position *posp*. In the elements following *posp* the value of the attribute *position* is reduced by 1 (one).

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)
6.7.1 FT_StemmedPhrase Type

6.7 FT_StemmedPhrase Type and Routines

6.7.1 FT_StemmedPhrase Type

Purpose

The *FT_StemmedPhrase* type provides facilities for the construction of stemmed phrase search patterns and for searching of occurrences of stemmed phrases in text.

Definition

```
CREATE TYPE FT_StemmedPhrase
  UNDER FT_Phrase
  INSTANTIABLE
  NOT FINAL

  OVERRIDING METHOD Contains(text FullText)
    RETURNS BOOLEAN,

  OVERRIDING METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
    RETURNS FT_Pattern,

  METHOD TokenizePositionAndStem()
    RETURNS FT_TokenPosition ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]
    LANGUAGE SQL
    DETERMINISTIC
    CONTAINS SQL
    CALLED ON NULL INPUT,

  CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_StemmedPhrase
    (w1 FullText_Token ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength],
     Language CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxLanguageLength))
    RETURNS FT_StemmedPhrase
    SELF AS RESULT
    LANGUAGE SQL
    DETERMINISTIC
    CONTAINS SQL
    CALLED ON NULL INPUT,

  CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_StemmedPhrase
    (w1 FullText_Token ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength],
     Language CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxLanguageLength),
     EscapeChar CHARACTER(1))
    RETURNS FT_StemmedPhrase
    SELF AS RESULT
    LANGUAGE SQL
    DETERMINISTIC
    CONTAINS SQL
    CALLED ON NULL INPUT
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.
- 2) *FT_MaxLanguageLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a language specification.

Description

- 1) The *FT_StemmedPhrase* type provides:

- a) an attribute *PhrasePart*,
 - b) an attribute *Language*,
 - c) an attribute *EscapeSpec*,
 - d) a method *Contains(FullText)*,
 - e) a method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*,
 - f) a method *TokenizePositionAndStem()*,
 - g) a method *FT_StemmedPhrase(FullText_Token ARRAY, CHARACTER VARYING)* and a method *FT_StemmedPhrase(FullText_Token ARRAY, CHARACTER VARYING, CHARACTER)*.
- 2) An *FT_StemmedPhrase* value denotes an array of *FullText_Token* tokens which in turn represents a sequence of words. When used for searching, each such word is to be replaced by its stemmed form. The array may be empty or the null value.

A token may be the null value.

NOTE 17 *FT_StemmedPhrase* values are intentionally more general than <phrase>s, the latter containing at least two <word representation>s, none of which may be a NULL string.

- 3) If a token exclusively consists of '%' wild card characters, then it denotes an optional word.

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)

6.7.2 Contains Method

6.7.2 Contains Method

Purpose

Search a *FullText* value for an *FT_StemmedPhrase* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD Contains
(text FullText)
RETURNS BOOLEAN
FOR FT_StemmedPhrase
BEGIN
    DECLARE tokarray FT_TokenPosition ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength];
    DECLARE result BOOLEAN;
    DECLARE lent INTEGER;
    DECLARE tlen INTEGER;
    DECLARE lenp INTEGER;
    DECLARE plen INTEGER;
    DECLARE nmsk INTEGER;
    DECLARE canonicphr FT_TokenPosition ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength];
    DECLARE i INTEGER;

    SET tokarray = text.TokenizePositionAndStem();
    IF tokarray IS NULL THEN
        RETURN UNKNOWN;
    END IF;

    SET lent = CARDINALITY(tokarray);
    SET canonicphr = SELF.TokenizePositionAndStem();
    IF (SELF IS NULL OR canonicphr IS NULL) AND lent <> 0 THEN
        RETURN UNKNOWN;
    END IF;

    SET lenp = CARDINALITY(canonicphr);
    SET nmsk = 0;
    SET i = 1;
    -----
    -- find tokens representing an optional word
    -----
L1: WHILE (i <= lenp) DO
    IF canonicphr[i].token SIMILAR '%$%' ESCAPE '$' THEN
        SET nmsk = nmsk + 1;
    END IF;
    SET i = i + 1;
END WHILE L1;
IF lent = 0 THEN
    RETURN (FALSE = SELF.NOT_tag);
END IF;
IF lenp = 0 THEN
    --
    -- !! See Description
    --
END IF;

SET tlen = tokarray[lent].position;
SET plen = canonicphr[lenp].position;
IF tlen < plen - nmsk THEN
    RETURN (FALSE = SELF.NOT_tag);
END IF;
IF plen - nmsk = 0 THEN
    RETURN (TRUE = SELF.NOT_tag);
END IF;
```

```

SET result = (WITH RECURSIVE textrange (i) AS
  (VALUES (1)
   UNION
   SELECT i + 1
   FROM   textrange
   WHERE  i < lent
  ),
Temp(BasI) AS
  (SELECT MAX(BasI)
   FROM (VALUES(1) UNION
        SELECT
          CASE tokarray[i].position <=
              tlen + 1 - (plen - nmsk)
            AND
              matches(tokarray, i, lent, canonicphr, 1, lenp,
                    SELF.EscapeSpec, SELF.Language)
            WHEN FALSE THEN 1
            WHEN TRUE  THEN 3
            ELSE          2
          END
        FROM textrange AS tr(i)) AS TT(BasI)
  )
  SELECT ARRAY[FALSE, UNKNOWNN, NULL][BaseI]
  FROM Temp
);
RETURN (SELF.NOT_tag = result);
END

```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The method *Contains(FullText)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *FullText* argument *text*.
- 2) If the first element of *SELF.PhrasePart* or the last element of *SELF.PhrasePart* is a stop word, or all elements of *SELF.PhrasePart* are stop words, then it is implementation-defined whether an exception condition is raised: *SQL/MM Full-Text exception – invalid search expression*.
- 3) Let *TL* be the result of the invocation of *text.TokenizePositionAndStem()* and *TLE* be elements of *TL*. Every *TLE* represents some word of *text* reduced to its base reduced form and in an implementation-defined normalized way, with leading and trailing blanks removed. It is implementation-defined whether no stop word of *text*, all stop words of *text*, or all stop words of *text* except for leading and trailing stop words are represented by some *TLE*. If stop words are included, then it is implementation-defined how they are effectively represented, provided their representation is such that the result of comparing any two stop words is True.
- 4) Let *TPL* be the result of *SELF.TokenizePositionAndStem()*. Every element *TPLE* of *TPL* represents some word of *SELF.PhrasePart* reduced to its base reduced form and represented in an implementation-defined normalized way, with leading and trailing blanks removed. It is implementation-defined whether no stop word of *SELF.PhrasePart*, all stop words of *SELF.PhrasePart*, or all stop words of *SELF.PhrasePart* except for leading and trailing stop words are represented by some *TPLE* in an implementation-defined way, provided stop word are dealt with in the same fashion by the *TokenizePositionAndStem* methods of the *FullText* and *FT_StemmedPhrase* types.
- 5) Case:

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)

6.7.2 Contains Method

- a) If *TL* is empty or *TLE.position* of the last *TLE* is less than *TPLE.position* of the last *TPLE*, not counting the *TPLEs* representing optional words, then let *R* be False.
 - b) If either *SELF*, *SELF.PhrasePart* or *text* is the null value, then let *R* be Unknown.
 - c) If the cardinality of *TPL* is zero then it is implementation-defined whether
 - i) to let *R* be False, or
 - ii) an exception condition is raised: *SQL/MM Full-Text exception – effectively empty search expression*.
 - d) If *TPL* represents optional words only, then let *R* be True.
 - e) Otherwise:
 - i) Let *n* be the number of elements of *TPL*. Let *now* be the number of optional words. Let *STS* be a set of *m* arrays of *FT_TokenPosition* values, where *m* is 2 to the power of *n*, such that:
 - A) *TPL* is an element of *STS*.
 - B) Every other element of *STS* (if *m* > 1 (one)) is obtained from *TPL* as follows:
 - 1) Remove one of the possible combinations of *TPLEs* representing optional words.
 - 2) For each removed *TPLE*, for each subsequent *TPLE*, say *t*, reduce the value *t.position* by 1 (one).
 - C) No two elements of *STS* are equal.
 - ii) Let *S1* be a sequence of *L* *TLEs* of *TL* and let *S2* be an element of *STS* of the same length *L*. For *j* ranging from 1 to *L*, let *S1_j* and *S2_j* be elements of *S1* and *S2*, respectively. Let *TT* be *S2_j.token*.
 - iii) Case:
 - A) If there exists some *S1* and some *S2* such that
$$S1_j \text{ LIKE } TT$$
is True for every *j*, then let *R* be True.
 - B) If for every possible pair (*S1*, *S2*)
$$S1_j \text{ LIKE } TT$$
is False for at least one *j*, then let *R* be False.
 - C) Otherwise, let *R* be Unknown.
- 6) *Contains(FullText)* returns:
- Case:
- a) Unknown, if *NOT_tag* is the null value.
 - b) NOT *R*, if *NOT_tag* is False.
 - c) Otherwise, *R*.

6.7.3 StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method

Purpose

Convert an *FT_StemmedPhrase* value to an *FT_Pattern* value.

Definition

```

CREATE METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
  RETURNS FT_Pattern
  FOR FT_StemmedPhrase
  BEGIN
    DECLARE result CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength);
    DECLARE len INTEGER;
    DECLARE i INTEGER;

    IF SELF.PhrasePart IS NULL THEN
      RETURN CAST(NULL AS FT_Pattern);
    END IF;

    SET i = 1;
    SET len = CARDINALITY(SELF.PhrasePart);
    SET result = 'STEMMED FORM OF ' || SELF.Language || '''';
    WHILE (i <= len) DO
      SET result = result
        || InsertDQS(SELF.PhrasePart[i])
        || ' ';
      SET i = i + 1;
    END WHILE;

    SET RESULT = TRIM(TRAILING ' ' FROM result)
      || CASE WHEN SELF.EscapeSpec IS NULL THEN
        ''
      ELSE
        '' ESCAPE '' || SELF.EscapeSpec || '''';
    END

    IF SELF.NOT_tag IS UNKNOWN THEN
      SET result = NULL;
    ELSEIF NOT SELF.NOT_tag THEN
      SET result = 'NOT ' || result;
    END IF;
    RETURN CAST(result AS FT_Pattern);
  END

```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxPatternLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for the character representation of an instance of *FT_Pattern*.

Description

- 1) The method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* has no input parameters.
- 2) *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* returns an *FT_Pattern* value of the form <stemmed phrase> or the form NOT <stemmed phrase>.
- 3) If *SELF* or *SELF.PhrasePart* is the null value or *SELF.NOT_tag* is *Unknown*, then the result is the null value.

6.7.4 TokenizePositionAndStem Method

Purpose

Normalize and stem-reduce the *PhrasePart* attribute of an *FT_StemmedPhrase* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD TokenizePositionAndStem()  
  RETURNS FT_TokenPosition ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]  
  FOR FT_StemmedPhrase  
  BEGIN  
    --  
    -- !! See Description  
    --  
  END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The method *TokenizePositionAndStem()* has no input parameters.
- 2) *TokenizePositionAndStem()* normalizes and stem-reduces the sequence of words represented by *SELF.PhrasePart* in an implementation-defined way. In addition, it is implementation-defined whether stop words are effectively included in the result, and if so, how they are represented. However, a conforming implementation must treat stop words in this method and in the *FullText* method *TokenizePositionAndStem()* in the same way.

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)

6.7.5 FT_StemmedPhrase Methods

6.7.5 FT_StemmedPhrase Methods

Purpose

Return a specified *FT_StemmedPhrase* value.

Definition

```
CREATE CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_StemmedPhrase
  (w1 FullText_Token ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength],
   Language CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxLanguageLength))
RETURNS FT_StemmedPhrase
FOR FT_StemmedPhrase
BEGIN
  DECLARE i INTEGER;

  IF w1 IS NULL THEN
    RETURN SELF;
  END IF;
  SET SELF.NOT_tag = TRUE;
  SET SELF.Language = Language;
  SET SELF.PhrasePart =
    CAST(ARRAY[] AS FullText_Token ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]);
  -- This method expects a list of FullText tokens
  -- where <doublequote symbol>s have not been
  -- eliminated yet. Therefore, tokens in w1 may contain
  -- <doublequote symbol>s that have to be turned into
  -- <double quote>s
  SET i = 0;
L1: WHILE (i < CARDINALITY(w1)) DO
  SET SELF.PhrasePart = SELF.PhrasePart
    || ARRAY[EliminatedQS(w1[i + 1])];
  SET i = i + 1;
END WHILE L1;
RETURN SELF;
END

CREATE CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_StemmedPhrase
  (w1 FullText_Token ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength],
   Language CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxLanguageLength),
   EscapeChar CHARACTER(1))
RETURNS FT_StemmedPhrase
FOR FT_StemmedPhrase
RETURN NEW FT_StemmedPhrase(w1, Language).EscapeSpec(EscapeChar)
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.
- 2) *FT_MaxLanguageLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a language specification.

Description

- 1) The method *FT_StemmedPhrase(FullText_Token ARRAY, CHARACTER VARYING)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) an array *w1* of *FullText_Token* values, representing a sequence of words,
 - b) a CHARACTER VARYING value *Language*.

- 2) The method *FT_StemmedPhrase(FullText_Token ARRAY, CHARACTER VARYING, CHARACTER)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) an array *wl* of *FullText_Tokens*, representing a sequence of words,
 - b) a CHARACTER VARYING value *Language*,
 - c) a CHARACTER value *EscapeChar*.
- 3) In the process of initializing an *FT_StemmedPhrase* value, the appearance of <doublequote symbol>s in the token *wl* is taken care of by the function *EliminateDQS(FullText_Token)*. *EliminateDQS(FullText_Token)* replaces each <doublequote symbol> in a token by a <double quote>.

6.8 FT_Proxi Type and Routines

6.8.1 FT_Proxi Type

Purpose

FT_Proxi values represent proximity search patterns.

Definition

```
CREATE TYPE FT_Proxi
  UNDER FT_Primary
  AS (
    TL1 FT_TextLiteral ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength],
    TL2 FT_TextLiteral ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength],
    dv INTEGER, -- distance value
    du FullText_Token, -- distance unit
    oi FullText_Token -- order indicator
  )
  INSTANTIABLE
  NOT FINAL

  OVERRIDING METHOD Contains(text FullText)
    RETURNS BOOLEAN,

  OVERRIDING METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
    RETURNS FT_Pattern,

  CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_Proxi
    (TokList1 FT_TextLiteral ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength],
     TokList2 FT_TextLiteral ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength],
     DistanceValue INTEGER,
     DistanceUnit FullText_Token,
     OrderIndicator FullText_Token)
    RETURNS FT_Proxi
  SELF AS RESULT
  LANGUAGE SQL
  DETERMINISTIC
  CONTAINS SQL
  CALLED ON NULL INPUT
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The *FT_Proxi* type provides:
 - a) an attribute *TL1*,
 - b) an attribute *TL2*,
 - c) an attribute *dv*,
 - d) an attribute *du*,
 - e) an attribute *oi*,
 - f) a method *Contains(FullText)*,

- g) a method *StrctiPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*,
- h) a method *FT_Proxi(FT_TextLiteral ARRAY, FT_TextLiteral ARRAY, INTEGER, FullText_Token, FullText_Token)*.

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)
6.8.2 Contains Method

6.8.2 Contains Method

Purpose

Search a *FullText* value for an *FT_Proxi* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD Contains
(text FullText)
RETURNS BOOLEAN
FOR FT_Proxi
BEGIN
    DECLARE result BOOLEAN;
    DECLARE TokText FT_TokenPosition ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength];
    DECLARE lent INTEGER;
    DECLARE lentl1 INTEGER;
    DECLARE lentl2 INTEGER;

    IF SELF.du <> 'CHARACTERS' AND
       SELF.du <> 'WORDS' AND
       SELF.du <> 'SENTENCES' AND
       SELF.du <> 'PARAGRAPHS' THEN
        RETURN -- !! See Description ;
    END IF;

    SET TokText = text.TokenizePosition(SELF.du);
    IF TokText IS NULL THEN
        SET lent = CAST(NULL AS INTEGER)
    ELSE
        SET lent = CARDINALITY(TokText);
    END IF;

    IF SELF IS NULL OR SELF.TL1 IS NULL THEN
        SET lentl1 = CAST(NULL AS INTEGER)
    ELSE
        SET lentl1 = CARDINALITY(SELF.TL1);
    END IF;

    IF SELF IS NULL OR SELF.TL2 IS NULL THEN
        SET lentl2 = CAST(NULL AS INTEGER)
    ELSE
        SET lentl2 = CARDINALITY(SELF.TL2);
    END IF;

    IF lent = 0 OR lentl1 = 0 OR lentl2 = 0 THEN
        SET result = FALSE;
    ELSEIF lent IS NULL OR lentl1 IS NULL OR lentl2 IS NULL THEN
        RETURN UNKNOWN;
    ELSE
        SET result =
            (WITH RECURSIVE
              ttTab(ind, tp) AS
                (VALUES(1, TokText[1])
                 UNION
                 SELECT ind + 1, TokText[ind + 1]
                 FROM ttTab
                 WHERE ind < lent
                ),
              t1l1Tab(ind, tok) AS
                (VALUES(1, SELF.TL1[1])
                 UNION
                 SELECT ind + 1, SELF.TL1[ind + 1]
```

```

        FROM t11Tab
        WHERE ind < lent11
    ),
    t12Tab(ind, tok) AS
    (VALUES(1, SELF.TL2[1])
     UNION
     SELECT ind + 1, SELF.TL2[ind + 1]
     FROM t12Tab
     WHERE ind < lent12
    ),
    Temp[BasI] AS
    (SELECT MAX(BasI)
     FROM (VALUES(1) UNION
     SELECT
         CASE l1.tok.Contains(
             NEW FullText(tt1.tp.token, text.Language))
         AND l2.tok.Contains(
             NEW FullText(tt2.tp.token, text.Language))
         AND tt2.tp.position
             BETWEEN tt1.tp.position
                 - (SELF.dv + tt2.tp.corrVal) *
                 (CASE SELF.oi
                    WHEN 'IN ORDER' THEN 0
                    ELSE 1
                 END)
         AND tt1.tp.position
             + SELF.dv + tt1.tp.corrVal
         WHEN FALSE THEN 1
         WHEN TRUE THEN 3
         ELSE 2
     END
     FROM ttTab tt1, t11Tab l1, ttTab tt2, t12Tab l2)
     AS TT(BasI)
    )
    SELECT ARRAY[FALSE, UNKNOWN, TRUE][BasI] FROM Temp
    );
END IF;
RETURN (SELF.NOT_tag = result);
END

```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The method *Contains(FullText)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *FullText* value *text*.
- 2) Case:
 - a) If *SELF.TL1*, *SELF.TL2* or the result of *text.TokenizePosition(SELF.du)* is empty, then let *R* be False.
 - b) If *SELF*, *SELF.TL1*, *SELF.TL2* or the result of *text.TokenizePosition(prox.du)* is the null value, then let *R* be Unknown.
 - c) Otherwise, let *TPS1* be the result of *text.TokenizePosition(SELF.du)*; let *TPS2* be the set of all pairs (*tp1*, *tp2*) such that *tp1* and *tp2* are elements of *TPS1*, and

Case:

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)
6.8.2 Contains Method

- i) The order indication *SELF.oi* has the value 'IN ORDER' and the difference

$$tp2.pos - tp1.pos$$

is not negative and not greater than the distance value *SELF.dv*.

- ii) The order indication *SELF.oi* has the value 'ANY ORDER' and the absolute value of the difference

$$tp2.pos - tp1.pos$$

is not greater than the distance value *SELF.dv*.

Let *WPS* be the set of all pairs (*w1*, *w2*) such that every *w1* and every *w2* is an element of *SELF.TL1* and *SELF.TL2*, respectively.

Case:

- i) If there is at least one pair (*tp1*, *tp2*) and one pair (*w1*, *w2*) such that both

`w1.Contains(NEW FullText(tp1.token), text.Language)`

and

`w2.Contains(NEW FullText(tp2.token), text.Language)`

are True then let *R* be True.

- ii) If for all pairs (*tp1*, *tp2*) and (*w1*, *w2*) both

`w1.Contains(NEW FullText(tp1.token), text.Language)`

and

`w2.Contains(NEW FullText(tp2.token), text.Language)`

are False then let *R* be False.

- iii) Otherwise, let *R* be Unknown.

NOTE 18 The method *Contains* is described in Subclause 6.4.2, "Contains Method" and Subclause 6.5.2, "Contains Method".

- 3) *Contains(FullText)* returns:

Case:

- a) Unknown, if *SELF.NOT_tag* is the null value.

- b) NOT *R*, if *SELF.NOT_tag* is False.

- c) Otherwise, *R*.

6.8.3 StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method

Purpose

Convert an *FT_Proxi* value to an *FT_Pattern* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()  
  RETURNS FT_Pattern  
  FOR FT_Proxi  
  BEGIN  
    DECLARE result CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength);  
  
    SET result = CAST(StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern(SELF.TL1)  
      AS CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength))  
      || ' NEAR '  
      || CAST(StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern(SELF.TL2)  
      AS CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength))  
      || ' WITHIN '  
      || CAST(SELF.dv AS CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength))  
      || ' ' || TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM SELF.du)  
      || ' ' || TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM SELF.oi);  
  
    IF SELF.NOT_tag IS UNKNOWN THEN  
      SET result = NULL;  
    ELSEIF NOT SELF.NOT_tag THEN  
      result = 'NOT ' || result;  
    END IF;  
    RETURN CAST(result AS FT_Pattern);  
  END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxPatternLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for the character representation of an *FT_Pattern* value.

Description

- 1) The method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* has no input parameters.
- 2) *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* returns an *FT_Pattern* value of the form <Proximity expansion> or the form NOT <Proximity expansion>.
- 3) If *SELF* or any of the attributes *SELF.TL1*, *SELF.du*, *SELF.dv*, *SELF.oi* are the null value or *SELF.NOT_tag* is Unknown, then the result is the null value.

6.8.4 FT_Proxi Method

Purpose

Return a specified *FT_Proxi* value.

Definition

```
CREATE CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_Proxi
  (TokList1 FT_TextLiteral ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength],
   TokList2 FT_TextLiteral ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength],
   DistanceValue INTEGER,
   DistanceUnit FullText_Token,
   OrderIndicator FullText_Token)
RETURNS FT_Proxi
FOR FT_Proxi
RETURN SELF.TLI(TokList1).TL2(TokList2).
  dv(DistanceValue).du(DistanceUnit).
  oi(OrderIndicator).NOT_tag(TRUE)
```

Definitional Rules

1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The method *FT_Proxi*(*FT_TextLiteral* ARRAY, *FT_TextLiteral* ARRAY, *INTEGER*, *FullText_Token*, *FullText_Token*) takes the following input parameters:
 - a) an array *TokList1* of *FT_TextLiteral* elements, which represents a set of words,
 - b) an array *TokList2* of *FT_TextLiteral* elements, which represents a set of words,
 - c) an *INTEGER* value *DistanceValue*,
 - d) a *FullText_Token* value *DistanceUnit*,
 - e) a *FullText_Token* value *OrderIndicator*.
- 2) All arguments may be the null value. *TokList1* and *TokList2* may be empty.

6.9 FT_Soundex Type and Routines

6.9.1 FT_Soundex Type

Purpose

FT_Soundex values represent a search token to be matched in text due to phonetic criteria.

Definition

```
CREATE TYPE FT_Soundex
  UNDER FT_Primary
  AS (
    spoken FT_TextLiteral
  )
  INSTANTIABLE
  NOT FINAL

  OVERRIDING METHOD Contains(text FullText)
    RETURNS BOOLEAN,

  OVERRIDING METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
    RETURNS FT_Pattern,

  CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_Soundex(snd FT_TextLiteral)
    RETURNS FT_Soundex
    SELF AS RESULT
  LANGUAGE SQL
  DETERMINISTIC
  CONTAINS SQL
  CALLED ON NULL INPUT
```

Description

- 1) The *FT_Soundex* type provides:
 - a) an attribute *spoken*,
 - b) a method *Contains(FullText)*,
 - c) a method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*,
 - d) a method *FT_Soundex(FT_TextLiteral)*,
 - e) a function *GetSoundsSimilar(FT_TextLiteral)*.

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)
6.9.2 Contains Method

6.9.2 Contains Method

Purpose

Search a *FullText* value for an *FT_Soundex* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD Contains
  (text FullText)
  RETURNS BOOLEAN
  FOR FT_Soundex
  RETURN (SELF.NOT_tag =
    NEW FT_Any(GetSoundsSimilar(SELF.spoken)).Contains(text))
```

Description

1) The method *Contains(FullText)* takes the following input parameters:

a) a *FullText* value *text*.

2) Let *R* be the result of

```
NEW FT_Any(GetSoundsSimilar(SELF.spoken)).Contains(text)
```

Case:

a) If *SELF.NOT_tag* is Unknown, then *Contains(FullText)* returns Unknown.

b) If *SELF.NOT_tag* is False, then *Contains(FullText)* returns NOT *R*.

c) Otherwise, *Contains(FullText)* returns *R*.

6.9.3 StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method

Purpose

Convert an *FT_Soundex* value to an *FT_Pattern* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()  
  RETURNS FT_Pattern  
  FOR FT_Soundex  
  BEGIN  
    DECLARE result CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength);  
  
    IF SELF.NOT_tag IS UNKNOWN THEN  
      RETURN CAST(NULL AS FT_Pattern);  
    END IF;  
  
    SET result = 'SOUNDS LIKE '  
      || CAST(SELF.spoken.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()  
      AS CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength));  
  
    IF NOT SELF.NOT_tag THEN  
      SET result = 'NOT ' || result;  
    END IF;  
    RETURN CAST(result AS FT_Pattern);  
  END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxPatternLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for the character representation of an *FT_Pattern* value.

Description

- 1) The method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* has no input parameters.
- 2) *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* returns an *FT_Pattern* value of the form <Soundex expansion> or the form NOT <Soundex expansion>.
- 3) If *SELF*, *SELF.spoken* or *SELF.spoken.LitPart* is the null value or *SELF.NOT_tag* is *Unknown*, then the result is the null value.

6.9.4 FT_Soundex Method

Purpose

Return a specified *FT_Soundex* value.

Definition

```
CREATE CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_Soundex
  (snd FT_TextLiteral)
  RETURNS FT_Soundex
  FOR FT_Soundex
  RETURN SELF.spoken(snd).NOT_tag(TRUE)
```

Description

- 1) The method *FT_Soundex(FT_TextLiteral)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) an *FT_TextLiteral* value *snd*.
- 2) Though not enforced by this standard, *snd* is intended to represent a sound pattern which is potentially equivalent to a number of tokens. The equivalence is language dependent and implementation-dependent.

6.9.5 GetSoundsSimilar Function

Purpose

Return an array of words that sound like a given word.

Definition

```
CREATE FUNCTION GetSoundsSimilar
  (spoken FT_TextLiteral)
  RETURNS FT_TextLiteral ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]
  LANGUAGE SQL
  DETERMINISTIC
  CONTAINS SQL
  CALLED ON NULL INPUT
  STATIC DISPATCH
  BEGIN
    --
    -- !! See Description
    --
  END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The function *GetSoundsSimilar(FT_TextLiteral)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) an *FT_TextLiteral* value *spoken*.
- 2) *GetSoundsSimilar(FT_TextLiteral)* permits the generation of an array of *FT_TextLiteral* items (representing a set of words) each of which has a different form though it has similar pronunciation as the input word. The input argument *spoken* is included in the generated array of tokens. The mechanism for generating this array, taking into account the language as specified in *spoken.Language*, is implementation-dependent.
- 3) If the input parameter *spoken* or *spoken.LitPart* is the null value, then the result of *GetSoundsSimilar(FT_TextLiteral)* is the null value. Further details of *GetSoundsSimilar(FT_TextLiteral)* are implementation-dependent.

6.10 FT_Fuzzy Type and Routines

6.10.1 FT_Fuzzy Type

Purpose

FT_Fuzzy values represent a search token to be matched in text with invariance to spelling mistakes.

Definition

```
CREATE TYPE FT_Fuzzy
  UNDER FT_Primary
  AS (spelled FT_TextLiteral)
  INSTANTIABLE
  NOT FINAL

  OVERRIDING METHOD Contains(text FullText)
  RETURNS BOOLEAN,

  OVERRIDING METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
  RETURNS FT_Pattern,

  CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_Fuzzy(spl FT_TextLiteral)
  RETURNS FT_Fuzzy
  SELF AS RESULT
  LANGUAGE SQL
  DETERMINISTIC
  CONTAINS SQL
  CALLED ON NULL INPUT
```

Description

- 1) The *FT_Fuzzy* type provides:
 - a) an attribute *spelled*,
 - b) a method *Contains(FullText)*,
 - c) a method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*,
 - d) a method *FT_Fuzzy(FT_TextLiteral)*.
 - e) a function *GetSpelledSimilar(FT_TextLiteral*

6.10.2 Contains Method

Purpose

Search a *FullText* value for an *FT_Fuzzy* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD Contains
  (text FullText)
  RETURNS BOOLEAN
  FOR FT_Fuzzy
  RETURN (SELF.NOT_tag = NEW FT_Any(GetSpelledSimilar(
    SELF.spelled)).Contains(text))
```

Description

1) The method *Contains(FullText)* takes the following input parameters:

a) a *FullText* value *text*.

2) Let *R* be the result of

```
NEW FT_Any(GetSpelledSimilar(SELF.spelled)).Contains(text)
```

Case:

a) If *SELF.NOT_tag* is Unknown, then *Contains(FullText)* returns Unknown.

b) If *SELF.NOT_tag* is False, then *Contains(FullText)* returns NOT *R*.

c) Otherwise, *Contains(FullText)* returns *R*.

6.10.3 StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method

Purpose

Convert an *FT_Fuzzy* value to an *FT_Pattern* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
  RETURNS FT_Pattern
  FOR FT_Fuzzy
  BEGIN
    DECLARE result CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength);

    IF SELF.NOT_tag IS UNKNOWN THEN
      RETURN CAST(NULL AS FT_Pattern);
    END IF;
    SET result = 'FUZZY FORM OF ' ||
      CAST(SELF.spelled.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern() AS
        CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength));
    IF NOT SELF.NOT_tag THEN
      SET result = 'NOT ' || result;
    END IF;
    RETURN CAST(result AS FT_Pattern);
  END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxPatternLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for the character representation of an *FT_Pattern* value.

Description

- 1) The method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* takes no input parameters.
- 2) *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* returns an *FT_Pattern* value of the form <Fuzzy expansion> or the form NOT <Fuzzy expansion>.
- 3) If *SELF*, *SELF.spelled*, or *SELF.spelled.LitPart* is the null value, or if *SELF.NOT_tag* is *Unknown*, then the result is the null value.

6.10.4 FT_Fuzzy Method

Purpose

Return a specified *FT_Fuzzy* value.

Definition

```
CREATE CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_Fuzzy  
  (spl FT_TextLiteral)  
  RETURNS FT_Fuzzy  
  FOR FT_Fuzzy  
  RETURN SELF.spelled(spl).NOT_tag(TRUE)
```

Description

- 1) The method *FT_Fuzzy(FT_TextLiteral)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) an *FT_TextLiteral* value *spl*.
- 2) Though not enforced by this standard, *spl* is intended to represent a spelling pattern which is potentially equivalent to a number of tokens. The equivalence is language dependent and implementation-dependent.

6.10.5 GetSpelledSimilar Function

Purpose

Return an array of words that have spelling similar to a given word.

Definition

```
CREATE FUNCTION GetSpelledSimilar
  (spelled FT_TextLiteral)
  RETURNS FT_TextLiteral ARRAY[ FT_MaxArrayLength]
  BEGIN
    --
    -- !! See Description
    --
  END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The function *GetSpelledSimilar(FT_TextLiteral)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) an *FT_TextLiteral* value *spelled*.
- 2) *GetSpelledSimilar(FT_TextLiteral)* permits the generation of an array of *FT_TextLiteral* items (representing a set of words) each of which has a different form though it has almost the same spelling as the input word. The input argument *spelled* is included in the generated array of tokens. The mechanism for generating this array, taking into account the language as specified in *spelled.LanguageSpec*, is implementation-dependent.
- 3) If the input parameter *spelled* or *spelled.LitPart* is the null value, then the result of *GetSpelledSimilar(FT_TextLiteral)* is the null value. Further details of *GetSpelledSimilar(FT_TextLiteral)* are implementation-dependent.

6.11 FT_BroaderTerm Type and Routines

6.11.1 FT_BroaderTerm Type

Purpose

FT_BroaderTerm values represent one or more thesaurus hierarchies and a search token; the latter is to be matched in text with corresponding broader terms as indicated by the named thesaurus hierarchies.

Definition

```
CREATE TYPE FT_BroaderTerm
  UNDER FT_Primary
  AS (
    thesaurus CHARACTER VARYING(FT_ThesNameLength),
    startingTerm FT_WordOrPhrase,
    expansionCnt INTEGER
  )
  INSTANTIABLE
  NOT FINAL

  OVERRIDING METHOD Contains(text FullText)
    RETURNS BOOLEAN,

  OVERRIDING METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
    RETURNS FT_Pattern,

  CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_BroaderTerm
    (thes_name CHARACTER VARYING(FT_ThesNameLength),
     strt FT_WordOrPhrase,
     thes_exp_count INTEGER)
    RETURNS FT_BroaderTerm
  SELF AS RESULT
  LANGUAGE SQL
  DETERMINISTIC
  CONTAINS SQL
  CALLED ON NULL INPUT
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_ThesNameLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a thesaurus name.

Description

- 1) The *FT_BroaderTerm* type provides:
 - a) an attribute *thesaurus*,
 - b) an attribute *startingTerm*,
 - c) an attribute *expansionCnt*,
 - d) a method *Contains(FullText)*,
 - e) a method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*,
 - f) a method *FT_BroaderTerm*(CHARACTER VARYING, *FT_WordOrPhrase*, INTEGER),
 - g) a function *GetBroaderTerms*(CHARACTER VARYING, *FT_WordOrPhrase*, INTEGER).

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)

6.11.1 FT_BroaderTerm Type

- 2) For the purpose of this type, a thesaurus is effectively a table with two columns, *NarrowerTerm* and *BroaderTerm*, respectively. For a given row, the values contained in the two columns represent terms, the second one being a broader term of the first one.
- 3) The number of available thesauri and their names are implementation-defined.

6.11.2 Contains Method

Purpose

Search a *FullText* value for an *FT_BroaderTerm* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD Contains
  (text FullText)
  RETURNS BOOLEAN
  FOR FT_BroaderTerm
  BEGIN
    DECLARE BrdArray FT_WordOrPhrase ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength];
    DECLARE result BOOLEAN;

    SET BrdArray = GetBroaderTerms(SELF.thesaurus ,
      SELF.startingTerm,
      SELF.expansionCnt);
    SET result = NEW FT_Any(BrdArray).Contains(text);

    RETURN (SELF.NOT_tag = result);
  END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The method *Contains(FullText)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *FullText* value *text*.
- 2) Let *R* be the result of

```
NEW FT_Any(GetBroaderTerms(SELF.thesaurus, SELF.startingTerm,
  SELF.expansionCnt)).Contains(text)
```

Case:

- a) If *SELF.NOT_tag* is Unknown, then *Contains(FullText)* returns Unknown.
- b) If *SELF.NOT_tag* is False, then *Contains(FullText)* returns NOT *R*.
- c) Otherwise, *Contains(FullText)* returns *R*.

6.11.3 StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method

Purpose

Convert an *FT_BroaderTerm* value to an *FT_Pattern* value.

Definition

```

CREATE METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
  RETURNS FT_Pattern
  FOR FT_BroaderTerm
  BEGIN
    DECLARE result CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength);

    IF SELF.NOT_tag IS UNKNOWN THEN
      RETURN CAST(NULL AS FT_Pattern);
    END IF;

    SET result = 'THESAURUS "'
      || SELF.thesaurus
      || '" EXPAND BROADER TERM OF '
      || CAST(SELF.startingTerm.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
        AS CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength))
      || CASE WHEN SELF.expansionCnt IS NULL THEN
        ''
      ELSE
        'FOR '
        || TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM CAST(SELF.expansionCnt
          AS CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength)))
        || ' LEVELS'
      END
    ;

    IF NOT SELF.NOT_tag THEN
      SET result = 'NOT ' || result;
    END IF;
    RETURN CAST(result AS FT_Pattern);
  END

```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxPatternLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for the character representation of an *FT_Pattern* value.

Description

- 1) The method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* has no input parameters.
- 2) *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* returns an *FT_Pattern* value of the form <Broader_Term expansion> or NOT <Broader_Term expansion>.
- 3) If *SELF*, *SELF.thesaurus*, or *SELF.startingTerm* is the null value or *SELF.NOT_tag* is *Unknown*, then the result is the null value.

6.11.4 FT_BroaderTerm Method

Purpose

Return a specified *FT_BroaderTerm* value.

Definition

```
CREATE CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_BroaderTerm
  (thes_name CHARACTER VARYING(FT_ThesNameLength),
   strt FT_WordOrPhrase,
   thes_exp_count INTEGER)
RETURNS FT_BroaderTerm
FOR FT_BroaderTerm
RETURN SELF.thesaurus(thes_name).startingTerm(strt).
  expansionCnt(thes_exp_count).NOT_tag(TRUE)
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_ThesNameLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a thesaurus name.

Description

- 1) The method *FT_BroaderTerm*(*CHARACTER VARYING*, *FT_WordOrPhrase*, *INTEGER*) takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *CHARACTER VARYING* value *thes_name*,
 - b) an *FT_WordOrPhrase* value *strt*,
 - c) an *INTEGER* value *thes_exp_count*.

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)
6.11.5 GetBroaderTerms Function

6.11.5 GetBroaderTerms Function

Purpose

Get broader terms from a thesaurus.

Definition

```
CREATE FUNCTION GetBroaderTerms
  (thes_name CHARACTER VARYING(FT_ThesNameLength),
   startingTerm FT_WordOrPhrase,
   thes_exp_count INTEGER)
RETURNS FT_WordOrPhrase ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]
LANGUAGE SQL
DETERMINISTIC
CONTAINS SQL
CALLED ON NULL INPUT
STATIC DISPATCH
BEGIN
  DECLARE ret FT_WordOrPhrase ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength];
  DECLARE strt FullText_Token ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength];
  DECLARE strt_termid INTEGER;
  DECLARE local_exp_count INTEGER;

  SET thes_name = TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM thes_name);
  SET strt = startingTerm.getWordArray();

  SET local_exp_count =
    CASE
      WHEN thes_exp_count IS NOT NULL THEN
        thes_exp_count
      ELSE
        1
    END;

  SET strt_termid =
    (SELECT TERMID
     FROM TERM_DICTIONARY
     WHERE EXPR.getWordArray() = strt
           AND TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM THNAME_DIC) = thes_name
    );

  SET ret=CAST(ARRAY[] AS FT_WordOrPhrase
              ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]);

  L1: FOR elem AS
    WITH RECURSIVE done_so_far (TERMID,NARROWER_TERMID,LEVEL) AS
      (SELECT TERMID, NARROWER_TERMID, 0
       FROM TERM_HIERARCHY
       WHERE NARROWER_TERMID = strt_termid
           AND TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM THNAME_HRR) = thes_name
           AND local_exp_count >= 0
      UNION
      SELECT more.TERMID, more.NARROWER_TERMID,
             CASE
               WHEN thes_exp_count IS NOT NULL THEN B.LEVEL + 1
               ELSE 0
             END AS LEVEL
       FROM done_so_far B, TERM_HIERARCHY more
       WHERE B.TERMID = more.NARROWER_TERMID
           AND TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM more.THNAME_HRR) = thes_name
           AND B.LEVEL < local_exp_count
    )
```

```
(SELECT ARRAY[TD.EXPR] AS EXPRarr1
  FROM TERM_DICTIONARY TD, done_so_far f
  WHERE TD.TERMID = f.TERMID
        AND TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM TD.THNAME_DIC) = thes_name)
UNION
(SELECT ARRAY[c1] AS EXPRarr1
  FROM (VALUES(startingTerm)) AS t1(c1),
        (VALUES(thes_name)) AS t2(c2)
  WHERE c1 IS NOT NULL AND c2 IS NOT NULL)
DO -- for every row of the above query result,
   -- append the value of column EXPRarr1 to the array

      SET ret = ret || EXPRarr1;
END FOR L1;
RETURN ret;
END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_ThesNameLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a thesaurus name.
- 2) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The function *GetBroaderTerms*(*CHARACTER VARYING*, *FT_WordOrPhrase*, *INTEGER*) takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *CHARACTER VARYING* value *thes_name*, denoting a thesaurus *TH*,
 - b) an *FT_WordOrPhrase* value *startingTerm*,
 - c) an *INTEGER* value *thes_exp_count*.

6.11.5 GetBroaderTerms Function

- 2) *GetBroaderTerms*(*CHARACTER VARYING*, *FT_WordOrPhrase*, *INTEGER*) returns an array of *FT_WordOrPhrase* elements which each represent a broader term.
- 3) *GetBroaderTerms*(*CHARACTER VARYING*, *FT_WordOrPhrase*, *INTEGER*) returns an empty array if the following is true:

- a) Either *startingTerm* or *thes_name* is the null value.

- 4) If the expansion count *thes_exp_count* is zero, *GetBroaderTerms*(*CHARACTER VARYING*, *FT_WordOrPhrase*, *INTEGER*) returns all terms in column *BroaderTerm* of those rows of *TH* the values of which in column *NarrowerTerm* are equivalent to *startingTerm*. If the expansion count *thes_exp_count* is $n > 0$, the resulting array represents the set:

$MS_1 \text{ UNION } MS_2$

where MS_1 is the multiset represented by the result of

`GetBroaderTerms(thes_name, startingTerm, thes_exp_count - 1)`

and MS_2 is given by

$MS_{2,1} \text{ UNION } \dots MS_{2,i} \dots \text{ UNION } MS_{2,m}$

where m is the number of elements in MS_1 , i ranges from 1 to m , E_i is some element of MS_1 , and $MS_{2,i}$ is represented by

`GetBroaderTerms(thes_name, E_i , 0)`

- 5) If the expansion count *thes_exp_count* is NULL, expansion is carried on until no new broader terms can be found.
- 6) The term *startingTerm* is included in the result.
- 7) It is implementation-defined, whether a check is made to ensure that the language specified in *startingTerm.Language* is compatible with the thesaurus as specified by *thes_name*, and if so, what kind of condition is raised in case of a language incompatibility.

6.12 FT_NarrowerTerm Type and Routines

6.12.1 FT_NarrowerTerm Type

Purpose

FT_NarrowerTerm values represent one or more thesaurus hierarchies and a search token; the latter is to be matched in text with corresponding narrower terms as indicated by the named thesaurus hierarchies.

Definition

```
CREATE TYPE FT_NarrowerTerm
  UNDER FT_Primary
  AS (
    thesaurus CHARACTER VARYING(FT_ThesNameLength),
    startingTerm FT_WordOrPhrase,
    expansionCnt INTEGER
  )
  INSTANTIABLE
  NOT FINAL

  OVERRIDING METHOD Contains(text FullText)
    RETURNS BOOLEAN,

  OVERRIDING METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
    RETURNS FT_Pattern,

  CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_NarrowerTerm
    (thes_name CHARACTER VARYING(FT_ThesNameLength),
     strt FT_WordOrPhrase,
     thes_exp_count INTEGER)
    RETURNS FT_NarrowerTerm
  SELF AS RESULT
  LANGUAGE SQL
  DETERMINISTIC
  CONTAINS SQL
  CALLED ON NULL INPUT
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_ThesNameLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a thesaurus name.

Description

- 1) The *FT_NarrowerTerm* type provides:
 - a) an attribute *thesaurus*,
 - b) an attribute *startingTerm*,
 - c) an attribute *expansionCnt*,
 - d) a method *Contains(FullText)*,
 - e) a method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*,
 - f) a method *FT_NarrowerTerm(CHARACTER VARYING, FT_WordOrPhrase, INTEGER)*,
 - g) a function *GetNarrowerTerms(CHARACTER VARYING, FT_WordOrPhrase, INTEGER)*.

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)

6.12.1 FT_NarrowerTerm Type

- 2) For the purpose of this type, a thesaurus is effectively a table with two columns, *NarrowerTerm* and *BroaderTerm*. For a given row, the values contained in the two columns represent terms, the first being a narrower term of the second one.
- 3) The number of available thesauri and their names are implementation-defined.

6.12.2 Contains Method

Purpose

Search a *FullText* value for an *FT_NarrowerTerm* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD Contains
  (text FullText)
  RETURNS BOOLEAN
  FOR FT_NarrowerTerm
  BEGIN
    DECLARE NrwArray FT_WordOrPhrase ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength];
    DECLARE result BOOLEAN;

    SET NrwArray = GetNarrowerTerms(SELF.thesaurus,
      SELF.startingTerm, SELF.expansionCnt);
    SET result = NEW FT_Any(NrwArray).Contains(text);

    RETURN (SELF.NOT_tag = result);
  END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The method *Contains(FullText)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *FullText* value *text*.
- 2) Let *R* be the result of

```
NEW FT_Any(GetNarrowerTerms(SELF.thesaurus, SELF.startingTerm,
  SELF.expansionCnt)).Contains(text)
```

Case:

- a) If *SELF.NOT_tag* is Unknown, then *Contains(FullText)* returns Unknown.
- b) If *SELF.NOT_tag* is False, then *Contains(FullText)* returns NOT *R*.
- c) Otherwise, *Contains(FullText)* returns *R*.

6.12.3 StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method

Purpose

Convert an *FT_NarrowerTerm* value to an *FT_Pattern* value.

Definition

```

CREATE METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
  RETURNS FT_Pattern
  FOR FT_NarrowerTerm
  BEGIN
    DECLARE result CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength);

    IF SELF.NOT_tag IS UNKNOWN THEN
      RETURN CAST(NULL AS FT_Pattern)
    END IF;

    SET result = 'THESAURUS "'
      || SELF.thesaurus
      || '" EXPAND NARROWER TERM OF '
      || CAST(SELF.startingTerm.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
        AS CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength))
      || CASE WHEN SELF.expansionCnt IS NULL THEN
        ''
      ELSE
        'FOR '
        || TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM CAST(SELF.expansionCnt
          AS CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength)))
        || ' LEVELS'
      END
    ;
    IF NOT SELF.NOT_tag THEN
      SET result = 'NOT ' || result;
    END IF;
    RETURN CAST(result AS FT_Pattern);
  END

```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxPatternLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for the character representation of an *FT_Pattern* value.

Description

- 1) The method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern(FT_NarrowerTerm)* has no input parameters:
- 2) *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* returns an *FT_Pattern* value of the form <Narrower_Term expansion> or NOT <Narrower_Term expansion>.
- 3) If *SELF*, *SELF.thesaurus*, or *SELF.startingTerm* is the null value or *SELF.NOT_tag* is *Unknown*, then the result is the null value.

6.12.4 FT_NarrowerTerm Method

Purpose

Return a specified *FT_NarrowerTerm* value.

Definition

```
CREATE CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_NarrowerTerm
  (thes_name CHARACTER VARYING(FT_ThesNameLength),
   strt FT_WordOrPhrase,
   thes_exp_count INTEGER)
RETURNS FT_NarrowerTerm
FOR FT_NarrowerTerm
RETURN SELF.thesaurus(thes_name).
  startingTerm(strt).expansionCnt(thes_exp_count).
  NOT_tag(TRUE)
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_ThesNameLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a thesaurus name.

Description

- 1) The method *FT_NarrowerTerm*(*CHARACTER VARYING*, *FT_WordOrPhrase*, *INTEGER*) takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *CHARACTER VARYING* value *thes_name*,
 - b) an *FT_WordOrPhrase* value *strt*,
 - c) an *INTEGER* value *thes_exp_count*.

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)
6.12.5 GetNarrowerTerms Function

6.12.5 GetNarrowerTerms Function

Purpose

Get narrower terms from a thesaurus.

Definition

```
CREATE FUNCTION GetNarrowerTerms
  (thes_name CHARACTER VARYING(FT_ThesNameLength),
   startingTerm FT_WordOrPhrase,
   thes_exp_count INTEGER)
RETURNS FT_WordOrPhrase ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]
LANGUAGE SQL
DETERMINISTIC
CONTAINS SQL
CALLED ON NULL INPUT
STATIC DISPATCH
BEGIN
  DECLARE ret FT_WordOrPhrase ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength];
  DECLARE strt FullText_Token ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength];
  DECLARE strt_termid INTEGER;
  DECLARE local_exp_count INTEGER;

  SET thes_name = TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM thes_name);
  SET strt = startingTerm.getWordArray();

  SET local_exp_count =
    CASE
      WHEN thes_exp_count IS NOT NULL THEN
        thes_exp_count
      ELSE
        1
    END;

  SET strt_termid =
    (SELECT TERMID
     FROM TERM_DICTIONARY
     WHERE EXPR.getWordArray() = strt
           AND TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM THNAME_DIC) = thes_name
    );

  SET ret = CAST(ARRAY[] AS FT_WordOrPhrase
                ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]);

  L1: FOR elem AS
    WITH RECURSIVE done_so_far (TERMID,NARROWER_TERMID,LEVEL) AS
      (SELECT TERMID, NARROWER_TERMID, 0
       FROM TERM_HIERARCHY
       WHERE TERMID = strt_termid
           AND TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM THNAME_HRR) = thes_name
           AND local_exp_count >= 0
      UNION
       SELECT more.TERMID, more.NARROWER_TERMID,
              CASE
                WHEN thes_exp_count IS NOT NULL THEN B.LEVEL + 1
                ELSE 0
              END AS LEVEL
       FROM done_so_far N, TERM_HIERARCHY more
       WHERE more.TERMID = N.NARROWER_TERMID
           AND TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM more.THNAME_HRR) = thes_name
           AND N.LEVEL < local_exp_count
    )

```

```

(SELECT ARRAY[TD.EXPR] AS EXPRarr1
 FROM TERM_DICTIONARY TD, done_so_far f
 WHERE TD.TERMID = f.NARROWER_TERMID
 AND TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM TD.THNAME_DIC) = thes_name)
UNION
(SELECT ARRAY[c1] AS EXPRarr1
 FROM (VALUES(startingTerm)) AS t1(c1),
 (VALUES(thes_name)) AS t2(c2)
 WHERE c1 IS NOT NULL AND c2 IS NOT NULL)
DO -- for every row of the above query result,
 -- append the value of column EXPRarr1 to the array

    SET ret = ret || EXPRarr1;
END FOR L1;
RETURN ret;
END

```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_ThesNameLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a thesaurus name.
- 2) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The function *GetNarrowerTerms*(*CHARACTER VARYING*, *FT_WordOrPhrase*, *INTEGER*) takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *CHARACTER VARYING* value *thes_name*, denoting a thesaurus *TH*,
 - b) an *FT_WordOrPhrase* value *startingTerm*,
 - c) an *INTEGER* value *thes_exp_count*.
- 2) *GetNarrowerTerms*(*CHARACTER VARYING*, *FT_WordOrPhrase*, *INTEGER*) returns an array of *FT_WordOrPhrase* elements which each represent a narrower term.
- 3) *GetNarrowerTerms*(*CHARACTER VARYING*, *FT_WordOrPhrase*, *INTEGER*) returns an empty array if the following is true:
 - a) Either *startingTerm* or *thes_name* is the null value.
- 4) If the expansion count *thes_exp_count* is zero, *GetNarrowerTerms*(*CHARACTER VARYING*, *FT_WordOrPhrase*, *INTEGER*) returns all terms in column *NarrowerTerm* of those rows of *TH* the values of which in column *BroaderTerm* are equivalent to *startingTerm*. If the expansion count *thes_exp_count* is $n > 0$, the resulting array represents the set:

$$MS_1 \text{ UNION } MS_2$$

where MS_1 is the multiset represented by the result of

$$\text{GetNarrowerTerms}(\text{thes_name}, \text{startingTerm}, \text{thes_exp_count} - 1)$$

and MS_2 is given by

$$MS_{2,1} \text{ UNION } \dots MS_{2,i} \dots \text{ UNION } MS_{2,m}$$

where m is the number of elements in MS_1 , i ranges from 1 to m , E_i is some element of MS_1 , and $MS_{2,i}$ is represented by

6.12.5 GetNarrowerTerms Function

GetNarrowerTerms(thes_name, E_i , 0)

- 5) If the expansion count *thes_exp_count* is the null value, expansion is carried on until no new narrower terms can be found.
- 6) The term *startingTerm* is included in the result.
- 7) It is implementation-defined, whether a check is made to ensure that the language specified in *startingTerm.Language* is compatible with the thesaurus as specified by *thes_name*, and if so, what kind of condition is raised in case of a language incompatibility.

6.13 FT_Synonym Type and Routines

6.13.1 FT_Synonym Type

Purpose

FT_Synonym values provide for the construction of synonym search patterns, and for searching of occurrences of synonyms in text.

Definition

```
CREATE TYPE FT_Synonym
  UNDER FT_Primary
  AS (
    thesaurus CHARACTER VARYING(FT_ThesNameLength),
    startingTerm FT_WordOrPhrase
  )
  INSTANTIABLE
  NOT FINAL

  OVERRIDING METHOD Contains(text FullText)
    RETURNS BOOLEAN,

  OVERRIDING METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
    RETURNS FT_Pattern,

  CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_Synonym
    (thes_name CHARACTER VARYING(FT_ThesNameLength),
     strt FT_WordOrPhrase)
    RETURNS FT_Synonym
  SELF AS RESULT
  LANGUAGE SQL
  DETERMINISTIC
  CONTAINS SQL
  CALLED ON NULL INPUT
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_ThesNameLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a thesaurus name.

Description

- 1) The *FT_Synonym* type provides:
 - a) an attribute *thesaurus*,
 - b) an attribute *startingTerm*,
 - c) a method *Contains(FullText)*,
 - d) a method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*,
 - e) a method *FT_Synonym(CHARACTER VARYING, FT_WordOrPhrase)*,
 - f) a function *GetSynonymTerms(CHARACTER VARYING, FT_WordOrPhrase)*.

6.13.1 FT_Synonym Type

- 2) For the purpose of this type, a thesaurus is effectively a table with one column, say *Ring*, the values of which represent sets of terms. In the context of such a thesaurus, two terms *T1* and *T2* are considered to be synonyms of each other, if the thesaurus contains at least one *Ring* value which contains both *T1* and *T2*.
- 3) The number of available thesauri and their names are implementation-defined.

6.13.2 Contains Method

Purpose

Search a *FullText* value for an *FT_Synonym* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD Contains
  (text FullText)
  RETURNS BOOLEAN
  FOR FT_Synonym
  BEGIN
    DECLARE SynArray FT_WordOrPhrase ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength];
    DECLARE result BOOLEAN;

    SET SynArray = GetSynonymTerms(SELF.thesaurus,
      SELF.startingTerm);
    SET result = NEW FT_Any(SynArray).Contains(text);

    RETURN (SELF.NOT_tag = result);
  END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The method *Contains(FullText)* takes the following input parameters:

- a) a *FullText* value *text*.

- 2) Let *R* be the result of

```
NEW FT_Any(GetSynonymTerms(SELF.thesaurus, SELF.startingTerm)).
  Contains(text)
```

- 3) Case:

- a) If *SELF.NOT_tag* is Unknown, then *Contains(FullText)* returns Unknown.

- b) If *SELF.NOT_tag* is False, then *Contains(FullText)* returns NOT *R*.

- c) Otherwise, *Contains(FullText)* returns *R*.

6.13.3 StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method

Purpose

Convert an *FT_Synonym* value to an *FT_Pattern* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
  RETURNS FT_Pattern
  FOR FT_Synonym
  BEGIN
    DECLARE result CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength);

    IF SELF.NOT_tag IS UNKNOWN THEN
      RETURN CAST(NULL AS FT_Pattern)
    END IF;

    SET result = 'THESAURUS "'
      || SELF.thesaurus
      || '" EXPAND SYNONYM TERM OF '
      || CAST(SELF.startingTerm.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
        AS CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength));

    IF NOT SELF.NOT_tag THEN
      SET result = 'NOT ' || result;
    END IF;
    RETURN CAST(result AS FT_Pattern);
  END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxPatternLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for the character representation of an *FT_Pattern* value.

Description

- 1) The method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* has no input parameters.
- 2) *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* returns an *FT_Pattern* value of the form <Synonym_Term expansion> or NOT <Synonym_Term expansion>.
- 3) If *SELF*, *SELF.thesaurus*, or *SELF.startingTerm* is the null value or *SELF.NOT_tag* is *Unknown*, then the result is the null value.

6.13.4 FT_Synonym Method

Purpose

Return a specified *FT_Synonym* value.

Definition

```
CREATE CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_Synonym
  (thes_name CHARACTER VARYING(FT_ThesNameLength),
   strt FT_WordOrPhrase)
RETURNS FT_Synonym
FOR FT_Synonym
RETURN SELF.thesaurus(thes_name).startingTerm(strt).
  NOT_tag(TRUE)
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_ThesNameLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a thesaurus name.

Description

- 1) The method *FT_Synonym*(*CHARACTER VARYING*, *FT_WordOrPhrase*) takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *CHARACTER VARYING* value *thes_name*,
 - b) an *FT_WordOrPhrase* value *strt*.

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)
6.13.5 GetSynonymTerms Function

6.13.5 GetSynonymTerms Function

Purpose

Get synonym terms from a thesaurus.

Definition

```
CREATE FUNCTION GetSynonymTerms
  (thes_name CHARACTER VARYING(FT_ThesNameLength),
   startingTerm FT_WordOrPhrase)
RETURNS FT_WordOrPhrase ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]
LANGUAGE SQL
DETERMINISTIC
CONTAINS SQL
CALLED ON NULL INPUT
STATIC DISPATCH
BEGIN
  DECLARE ret FT_WordOrPhrase ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength];
  DECLARE strt FullText_Token ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength];
  DECLARE strt_termid INTEGER;

  SET thes_name = TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM thes_name);
  SET strt = startingTerm.getWordArray();
  SET strt_termid =
    (SELECT TERMID
     FROM TERM_DICTIONARY
     WHERE EXPR.getWordArray() = strt
       AND TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM THNAME_DIC) = thes_name
    );

  SET ret = CAST(ARRAY[] AS FT_WordOrPhrase
    ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]);

L1: FOR elem AS
  WITH RECURSIVE done_so_far (TERMID,SYNONYM_TERMID) AS
    (SELECT TERMID, SYNONYM_TERMID
     FROM TERM_SYNONYM
     WHERE TERMID = strt_termid
       AND TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM THNAME_SYN) = thes_name
     UNION
     SELECT more.TERMID, more.SYNONYM_TERMID
     FROM done_so_far S, TERM_SYNONYM more
     WHERE more.TERMID = S.SYNONYM_TERMID
       AND TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM more.THNAME_SYN) = thes_name
    )
  SELECT ARRAY[TD.EXPR] AS EXPRarr1
  FROM TERM_DICTIONARY TD, done_so_far f
  WHERE TD.TERMID = f.SYNONYM_TERMID
    AND TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM TD.THNAME_DIC) = thes_name

  DO -- for every row of the above query result,
    -- append the value of column EXPRarr1 to the array

    SET ret = ret || EXPRarr1;
END FOR L1;
RETURN ret ||
CASE
  WHEN startingTerm IS NULL OR thes_name IS NULL THEN
    CAST(ARRAY[] AS FT_WordOrPhrase ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength])
  ELSE
    ARRAY[startingTerm]
END;
```

END

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_ThesNameLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a thesaurus name.
- 2) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The function *GetSynonymTerms*(*CHARACTER VARYING*, *FT_WordOrPhrase*) takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *CHARACTER VARYING* value *thes_name*, denoting a thesaurus *TH*,
 - b) an *FT_WordOrPhrase* value *startingTerm*.
- 2) *GetSynonymTerms*(*CHARACTER VARYING*, *FT_WordOrPhrase*) returns an array of *FT_WordOrPhrase* elements, which stands for a set of synonym terms.
- 3) *GetSynonymTerms*(*CHARACTER VARYING*, *FT_WordOrPhrase*) returns an empty array if either *startingTerm* or *thes_name* is the null value.
- 4) Let R_0 be a set containing *startingTerm* as its only element, let n be the number of *Ring* values containing *startingTerm*, and let R_i denote a single element set containing such a value (if any). The result of invoking *GetSynonymTerms*(*CHARACTER VARYING*, *FT_WordOrPhrase*) represents the following set:

$$R_0 \text{ UNION } R_1 \text{ UNION } \dots R_i \dots \text{ UNION } R_n$$

- 5) The term *startingTerm* is included in the result.
- 6) It is implementation-defined, whether a check is made to ensure that the language specified in *startingTerm.Language* is compatible with the thesaurus as specified by *thes_name*, and if so, what kind of condition is raised in case of a language incompatibility.

6.14 FT_PREFERREDTERM Type and Routines

6.14.1 FT_PREFERREDTERM Type

Purpose

FT_PREFERREDTERM values provide for the construction of preferred term search patterns, and for searching of occurrences of the associated preferred terms in text.

Definition

```
CREATE TYPE FT_PREFERREDTERM
  UNDER FT_PRIMARY
  AS (
    thesaurus CHARACTER VARYING(FT_ThesNameLength),
    startingTerm FT_WORDORPHRASE
  )
  INSTANTIABLE
  NOT FINAL

  OVERRIDING METHOD Contains(text FullText)
    RETURNS BOOLEAN,

  OVERRIDING METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
    RETURNS FT_PATTERN,

  CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_PREFERREDTERM
    (thes_name CHARACTER VARYING(FT_ThesNameLength),
     strt FT_WORDORPHRASE)
    RETURNS FT_PREFERREDTERM
  SELF AS RESULT
  LANGUAGE SQL
  DETERMINISTIC
  CONTAINS SQL
  CALLED ON NULL INPUT
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_ThesNameLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a thesaurus name.

Description

- 1) The *FT_PREFERREDTERM* type provides:
 - a) an attribute *thesaurus*,
 - b) an attribute *startingTerm*,
 - c) a method *Contains(FullText)*,
 - d) a method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*,
 - e) a method *FT_PREFERREDTERM(CHARACTER VARYING, FT_WORDORPHRASE)*,
 - f) a function *GetPreferredTerms(CHARACTER VARYING, FT_WORDORPHRASE)*.

- 2) For the purpose of this type, a thesaurus is effectively a table with three columns, say *PreferredTerm*, *TermId*, and *SynonymTerm*, the values of which represent terms. For a given row, two values *TermId* and *SynonymTerm* represent terms which are synonyms of each other, and *PreferredTerm* represents a preferred term associated with either of the former terms.
- 3) The number of available thesauri and their names are implementation-defined.

6.14.2 Contains Method

Purpose

Search a *FullText* value for an *FT_PREFERREDTERM* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD Contains
  (text FullText)
  RETURNS BOOLEAN
  FOR FT_PREFERREDTERM
  BEGIN
    DECLARE PfdArray FT_WordOrPhrase ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength];
    DECLARE result BOOLEAN;

    SET PfdArray = GetPreferredTerms(SELF.thesaurus,
      SELF.startingTerm);
    SET result = NEW FT_Any(PrdArray).Contains(text);

    RETURN (SELF.NOT_tag = result);
  END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The method *Contains(FullText)* takes the following input parameters:

- a) a *FullText* value *text*.

- 2) Let *R* be the result of

```
NEW FT_Any(GetPreferredTerms(SELF.thesaurus,
  SELF.startingTerm)).Contains(text)
```

- 3) Case:

- a) If *SELF.NOT_tag* is Unknown, then *Contains(FullText)* returns Unknown.
- b) If *SELF.NOT_tag* is False, then *Contains(FullText)* returns NOT *R*.
- c) Otherwise, *Contains(FullText)* returns *R*.

6.14.3 StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method

Purpose

Convert an *FT_PREFERREDTERM* value to an *FT_Pattern* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()  
  RETURNS FT_Pattern  
  FOR FT_PREFERREDTERM  
  BEGIN  
    DECLARE result CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength);  
  
    IF SELF.NOT_tag IS UNKNOWN THEN  
      RETURN CAST(NULL AS FT_Pattern)  
    END IF;  
  
    SET result = 'THESAURUS ''  
      || SELF.thesaurus  
      || '' EXPAND PREFERRED TERM OF '  
      || CAST(SELF.startingTerm.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()  
      AS CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength));  
  
    IF NOT SELF.NOT_tag THEN  
      SET result = 'NOT ' || result;  
    END IF;  
    RETURN CAST(result AS FT_Pattern);  
  END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxPatternLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for the character representation of an *FT_Pattern* value.

Description

- 1) The method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* has no input parameters.
- 2) *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* returns an *FT_Pattern* value of the form <Preferred_Term expansion> or NOT <Preferred_Term expansion>.
- 3) If *SELF*, *SELF.thesaurus*, or *SELF.startingTerm* is the null value or *SELF.NOT_tag* is *Unknown*, then the result is the null value.

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)
6.14.4 FT_PREFERREDTERM Method

6.14.4 FT_PREFERREDTERM Method

Purpose

Return a specified *FT_PREFERREDTERM* value.

Definition

```
CREATE CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_PREFERREDTERM
  (thes_name CHARACTER VARYING(FT_ThesNameLength),
   strt FT_WordOrPhrase)
RETURNS FT_PREFERREDTERM
FOR FT_PREFERREDTERM
RETURN SELF.thesaurus(thes_name).startingTerm(strt).
  NOT_tag(TRUE)
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_ThesNameLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a thesaurus name.

Description

- 1) The method *FT_PREFERREDTERM*(*CHARACTER VARYING*, *FT_WordOrPhrase*) takes the following input parameters:
 - a) an *CHARACTER VARYING* value *thes_name*,
 - b) an *FT_WordOrPhrase* value *strt*.

6.14.5 GetPreferredTerms Function

Purpose

Get preferred terms from a thesaurus.

Definition

```

CREATE FUNCTION GetPreferredTerms
  (thes_name CHARACTER VARYING(FT_ThesNameLength),
   startingTerm FT_WordOrPhrase)
RETURNS FT_WordOrPhrase ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]
LANGUAGE SQL
DETERMINISTIC
CONTAINS SQL
CALLED ON NULL INPUT
STATIC DISPATCH
BEGIN
  DECLARE ret FT_WordOrPhrase ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength];
  DECLARE strt FullText_Token ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength];
  DECLARE strt_termid INTEGER;

  SET thes_name = TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM thes_name);
  SET strt = startingTerm.getWordArray();
  SET strt_termid =
    (SELECT TERMID
     FROM TERM_DICTIONARY
     WHERE EXPR.getWordArray() = strt
       AND TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM THNAME_DIC) = thes_name
    );

  SET ret = CAST(ARRAY[] AS FT_WordOrPhrase
    ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]);

L1: FOR elem AS
  WITH temp_preferred (TERMID) AS
    (SELECT PREFERRED_TERMID
     FROM TERM_SYNONYM
     WHERE TERMID = strt_termid
       AND TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM THNAME_SYN) = thes_name
    )
  SELECT ARRAY[TD.EXPR] AS EXPRarr1
  FROM TERM_DICTIONARY TD, temp_preferred
  WHERE TD.TERMID = temp_preferred.TERMID
    AND TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM TD.THNAME_DIC) = thes_name

  DO -- for every row of the above query result,
    -- append the value of column EXPRarr1 to the array

    SET ret = ret || EXPRarr1;
END FOR L1;
RETURN ret ||
CASE
  WHEN startingTerm IS NULL OR
    thes_name IS NULL OR
    CARDINALITY(ret) > 0 THEN
    CAST(ARRAY[] AS FT_WordOrPhrase
      ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength])
  ELSE
    ARRAY[startingTerm]
END;
END

```


ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)
6.14.5 GetPreferredTerms Function

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_ThesNameLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a thesaurus name.
- 2) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The function *GetPreferredTerms*(*CHARACTER VARYING*, *FT_WordOrPhrase*) takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *CHARACTER VARYING* value *thes_name*, denoting a thesaurus *TH*,
 - b) an *FT_WordOrPhrase* value *startingTerm*.
- 2) *GetPreferredTerms*(*CHARACTER VARYING*, *FT_WordOrPhrase*) returns an array of *FT_WordOrPhrase* elements which stands for a set of preferred terms.
- 3) *GetPreferredTerms*(*CHARACTER VARYING*, *FT_WordOrPhrase*) returns an empty array if either *startingTerm* or *thes_name* is the null value.

***** Editor's Note 2-201 *****

Possible Problem:

Description Rule 5) begins "Otherwise, ..." when not in a conditional like if or case.

- 4) Otherwise, for every row of *TERM_SYNONYM* with a pair (*TERMID*, *THNAME_SYN*) such that the *TERMID* value represents *startingTerm* and the *THNAME_SYN* value is equivalent to *thes_name*, the term represented by the *PREFERRED_TERMID* value is included in the result.
- 5) The term *startingTerm* is included in the result if no corresponding preferred terms are found in *TERM_SYNONYM*.
- 6) It is implementation-defined, whether a check is made to ensure that the language specified in *startingTerm.Language* is compatible with the thesaurus as specified by *thes_name*, and if so, what kind of condition is raised in case of a language incompatibility.

6.15 FT_RelatedTerm Type and Routines

6.15.1 FT_RelatedTerm Type

Purpose

FT_RelatedTerm values provide for the construction of related term search patterns, and for searching of occurrences of the associated related terms in text.

Definition

```
CREATE TYPE FT_RelatedTerm
  UNDER FT_Primary
  AS (
    thesaurus CHARACTER VARYING(FT_ThesNameLength),
    startingTerm FT_WordOrPhrase
  )
  INSTANTIABLE
  NOT FINAL

  OVERRIDING METHOD Contains(text FullText)
    RETURNS BOOLEAN,

  OVERRIDING METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
    RETURNS FT_Pattern,

  CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_RelatedTerm
    (thes_name CHARACTER VARYING(FT_ThesNameLength),
     strt FT_WordOrPhrase)
    RETURNS FT_RelatedTerm
  SELF AS RESULT
  LANGUAGE SQL
  DETERMINISTIC
  CONTAINS SQL
  CALLED ON NULL INPUT
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_ThesNameLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a thesaurus name.

Description

- 1) The *FT_RelatedTerm* type provides:
 - a) an attribute *thesaurus*,
 - b) an attribute *startingTerm*,
 - c) a method *Contains(FullText)*,
 - d) a method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*,
 - e) a method *FT_RelatedTerm(CHARACTER VARYING, FT_WordOrPhrase)*,
 - f) a function *GetRelatedTerms(CHARACTER VARYING, FT_WordOrPhrase)*.
- 2) For the purpose of this type, a thesaurus is effectively a table, say *TH*, with two columns *Term* and *Related_Term*. For a given row, the two values *Term* and *Related_Term* represent terms such that the second is related to the first one.

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)
6.15.1 FT_RelatedTerm Type

- 3) The number of available thesauri and their names are implementation-defined.

6.15.2 Contains Method

Purpose

Search a *FullText* value for an *FT_RelatedTerm* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD Contains
  (text FullText)
  RETURNS BOOLEAN
  FOR FT_RelatedTerm
  BEGIN
    DECLARE RltdArray FT_WordOrPhrase ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength];
    DECLARE result BOOLEAN;

    SET RltdArray = GetRelatedTerms(SELF.thesaurus,
      SELF.startingTerm);
    SET result = NEW FT_Any(RltdArray).Contains(text);

    RETURN (SELF.NOT_tag = result);
  END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The method *Contains(FullText)* takes the following input parameters:

- a) a *FullText* value *text*.

- 2) Let *R* be the result of

```
NEW FT_Any(GetRelatedTerms(SELF.thesaurus, SELF.startingTerm)).
Contains(text)
```

- 3) Case:

- a) If *SELF.NOT_tag* is Unknown, then *Contains(FullText)* returns Unknown.
- b) If *SELF.NOT_tag* is False, then *Contains(FullText)* returns NOT *R*.
- c) Otherwise, *Contains(FullText)* returns *R*.

6.15.3 StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method

Purpose

Convert an *FT_RelatedTerm* value to an *FT_Pattern* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
  RETURNS FT_Pattern
  FOR FT_RelatedTerm
  BEGIN
    DECLARE result CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength);

    IF SELF.NOT_tag IS UNKNOWN THEN
      RETURN CAST(NULL AS FT_Pattern)
    END IF;

    SET result = 'THESAURUS "'
      || SELF.thesaurus
      || '" EXPAND RELATED TERM OF '
      || CAST(SELF.startingTerm.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
        AS CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength));

    IF NOT SELF.NOT_tag THEN
      SET result = 'NOT ' || result;
    END IF;
    RETURN CAST(result AS FT_Pattern);
  END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxPatternLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for the character representation of an *FT_Pattern* value.

Description

- 1) The method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* has no input parameters.
- 2) *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* returns an *FT_Pattern* value of the form <Related_Term expansion> or NOT <Related_Term expansion>.
- 3) If *SELF*, *SELF.thesaurus*, or *SELF.startingTerm* is the null value or *SELF.NOT_tag* is *Unknown*, then the result is the null value.

6.15.4 FT_RelatedTerm Method

Purpose

Return a specified *FT_RelatedTerm* value.

Definition

```
CREATE CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_RelatedTerm
  (thes_name CHARACTER VARYING(FT_ThesNameLength),
   strt FT_WordOrPhrase)
RETURNS FT_RelatedTerm
FOR FT_RelatedTerm
RETURN SELF.thesaurus(thes_name).startingTerm(strt).
  NOT_tag(TRUE)
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_ThesNameLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a thesaurus name.

Description

- 1) The method *FT_RelatedTerm*(*CHARACTER VARYING*, *FT_WordOrPhrase*) takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *CHARACTER VARYING* value *thes_name*,
 - b) an *FT_WordOrPhrase* value *strt*.

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)

6.15.5 GetRelatedTerms Function

6.15.5 GetRelatedTerms Function

Purpose

Get related terms from a thesaurus.

Definition

```
CREATE FUNCTION GetRelatedTerms
  (thes_name CHARACTER VARYING(FT_ThesNameLength),
   startingTerm FT_WordOrPhrase)
RETURNS FT_WordOrPhrase ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]
LANGUAGE SQL
DETERMINISTIC
CONTAINS SQL
CALLED ON NULL INPUT
STATIC DISPATCH
BEGIN
  DECLARE ret FT_WordOrPhrase ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength];
  DECLARE strt FullText_Token ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength];
  DECLARE strt_termid INTEGER;

  SET thes_name = TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM thes_name);
  SET strt = startingTerm.getWordArray();
  SET strt_termid =
    (SELECT TERMID
     FROM TERM_DICTIONARY
     WHERE EXPR.getWordArray() = strt
       AND TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM THNAME_DIC) = thes_name
    );

  SET ret = CAST(ARRAY[] AS FT_WordOrPhrase
    ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]);

  L1: FOR elem AS
    WITH temp_related (TERMID) AS
      (SELECT RELATED_TERMID
       FROM TERM_RELATED
       WHERE TERMID = strt_termid
         AND TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM THNAME_REL) = thes_name
      )
    SELECT ARRAY[TD.EXPR] AS EXPRarr1
    FROM TERM_DICTIONARY TD, temp_related
    WHERE TD.TERMID = temp_related.TERMID
      AND TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM TD.THNAME_DIC) = thes_name

    DO -- for every row of the above query result,
      -- append the value of column EXPRarr1 to the array

      SET ret = ret || EXPRarr1;
  END FOR L1;
  RETURN ret ||
  CASE
    WHEN startingTerm IS NULL OR thes_name IS NULL THEN
      CAST(ARRAY[] AS FT_WordOrPhrase
        ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength])
    ELSE
      ARRAY[startingTerm]
  END;
END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_ThesNameLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a thesaurus name.
- 2) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The function *GetRelatedTerms*(*CHARACTER VARYING*, *FT_WordOrPhrase*) takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *CHARACTER VARYING* value *thes_name*, denoting a thesaurus *TH*,
 - b) an *FT_WordOrPhrase* value *startingTerm*.
- 2) *GetRelatedTerms*(*CHARACTER VARYING*, *FT_WordOrPhrase*) returns an array of *FT_WordOrPhrase* elements which stands for a set of related terms.
- 3) *GetRelatedTerms*(*CHARACTER VARYING*, *FT_WordOrPhrase*) returns an empty array either *startingTerm* or *thes_name* is the null value.
- 4) Otherwise, for every row of *TH* with a pair (*Term*, *Related_Term*) such that the *Term* value represents *startingTerm*, the term represented by the *Related_Term* value is included in the result.
- 5) The term *startingTerm* is included in the result.
- 6) It is implementation-defined, whether a check is made to ensure that the language specified in *startingTerm.Language* is compatible with the thesaurus as specified by *thes_name*, and if so, what kind of condition is raised in case of a language incompatibility.

6.16 FT_TopTerm Type and Routines

6.16.1 FT_TopTerm Type

Purpose

FT_TopTerm values provide for the construction of top term search patterns, and for searching of occurrences of the associated top terms in text.

Definition

```
CREATE TYPE FT_TopTerm
  UNDER FT_Primary
  AS (
    thesaurus CHARACTER VARYING(FT_ThesNameLength),
    startingTerm FT_WordOrPhrase
  )
  INSTANTIABLE
  NOT FINAL

  OVERRIDING METHOD Contains(text FullText)
    RETURNS BOOLEAN,

  OVERRIDING METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
    RETURNS FT_Pattern,

  CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_TopTerm
    (thes_name CHARACTER VARYING(FT_ThesNameLength),
     strt FT_WordOrPhrase)
    RETURNS FT_TopTerm
  SELF AS RESULT
  LANGUAGE SQL
  DETERMINISTIC
  CONTAINS SQL
  CALLED ON NULL INPUT
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_ThesNameLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a thesaurus name.

Description

- 1) The *FT_TopTerm* type provides:
 - a) an attribute *thesaurus*,
 - b) an attribute *startingTerm*,
 - c) a method *Contains(FullText)*,
 - d) a method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*,
 - e) a method *FT_TopTerm(CHARACTER VARYING, FT_WordOrPhrase)*,
 - f) a function *GetTopTerms(CHARACTER VARYING, FT_WordOrPhrase)*.
- 2) For the purpose of this type, a thesaurus is effectively a table with two columns, *NarrowerTerm* and *BroaderTerm*. For a given row, the values contained in the two columns represent terms, the first being a narrower term of the second one.

- 3) The number of available thesauri and their names are implementation-defined.

6.16.2 Contains Method

Purpose

Search a *FullText* value for an *FT_TopTerm* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD Contains
  (text FullText)
  RETURNS BOOLEAN
  FOR FT_TopTerm
  BEGIN
    DECLARE TopArray FT_WordOrPhrase ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength];
    DECLARE result BOOLEAN;

    SET TopArray = GetTopTerms(SELF.thesaurus,
                              SELF.startingTerm);
    SET result = NEW FT_Any(TopArray).Contains(text);

    RETURN (SELF.NOT_tag = result);
  END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The method *Contains(FullText)* takes the following input parameters:

- a) a *FullText* value *text*.

- 2) Let *R* be the result of

```
NEW FT_Any(GetTopTerms(SELF.thesaurus,
                        SELF.startingTerm)).Contains(text)
```

- 3) Case:

- a) If *SELF.NOT_tag* is Unknown, then *Contains(FullText)* returns Unknown.
- b) If *SELF.NOT_tag* is False, then *Contains(FullText)* returns NOT *R*.
- c) Otherwise, *Contains(FullText)* returns *R*.

6.16.3 StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method

Purpose

Convert an *FT_TopTerm* value to an *FT_Pattern* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()  
  RETURNS FT_Pattern  
  FOR FT_TopTerm  
  BEGIN  
    DECLARE result CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength);  
  
    IF SELF.NOT_tag IS UNKNOWN THEN  
      RETURN CAST(NULL AS FT_Pattern)  
    END IF;  
  
    SET result = 'THESAURUS ''  
      || SELF.thesaurus  
      || '' EXPAND TOP TERM OF '  
      || CAST(SELF.startingTerm.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()  
      AS CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength));  
  
    IF NOT SELF.NOT_tag THEN  
      SET result = 'NOT ' || result;  
    END IF;  
    RETURN CAST(result AS FT_Pattern);  
  END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxPatternLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for the character representation of an *FT_Pattern* value.

Description

- 1) The method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* has no input parameters.
- 2) *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* returns an *FT_Pattern* value of the form <Top_Term expansion> or NOT <Top_Term expansion>.
- 3) If *SELF*, *SELF.thesaurus*, or *SELF.startingTerm* is the null value or *SELF.NOT_tag* is *Unknown*, then the result is the null value.

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)
6.16.4 FT_TopTerm Method

6.16.4 FT_TopTerm Method

Purpose

Return a specified *FT_TopTerm* value.

Definition

```
CREATE CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_TopTerm
  (thes_name CHARACTER VARYING(FT_ThesNameLength),
   strt FT_WordOrPhrase)
RETURNS FT_TopTerm
FOR FT_TopTerm
RETURN SELF.thesaurus(thes_name).startingTerm(strt).
  NOT_tag(TRUE)
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_ThesNameLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a thesaurus name.

Description

- 1) The method *FT_TopTerm*(*CHARACTER VARYING*, *FT_WordOrPhrase*) takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *CHARACTER VARYING* value *thes_name*,
 - b) an *FT_WordOrPhrase* value *strt*.

6.16.5 GetTopTerms Function

Purpose

Get top terms from a thesaurus.

Definition

```

CREATE FUNCTION GetTopTerms
  (thes_name CHARACTER VARYING(FT_ThesNameLength),
   startingTerm FT_WordOrPhrase)
RETURNS FT_WordOrPhrase ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]
LANGUAGE SQL
DETERMINISTIC
CONTAINS SQL
CALLED ON NULL INPUT
STATIC DISPATCH
BEGIN
  DECLARE ret FT_WordOrPhrase ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength];
  DECLARE strt FullText_Token ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength];
  DECLARE strt_termid INTEGER;

  SET thes_name = TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM thes_name);
  SET strt = startingTerm.getWordArray();
  SET strt_termid =
    (SELECT TERMID
     FROM TERM_DICTIONARY
     WHERE EXPR.getWordArray() = strt
       AND TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM THNAME_DIC) = thes_name
    );
  SET ret = CAST(ARRAY[] AS FT_WordOrPhrase
    ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]);
L1: FOR elem AS
  WITH RECURSIVE done_so_far (TERMID, NARROWER_TERMID) AS
    (SELECT TERMID, NARROWER_TERMID
     FROM TERM_HIERARCHY
     WHERE NARROWER_TERMID = strt_termid
       AND TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM THNAME_HRR) = thes_name
     UNION
     SELECT more.TERMID, more.NARROWER_TERMID
     FROM done_so_far B, TERM_HIERARCHY more
     WHERE more.NARROWER_TERMID = B.TERMID
       AND TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM more.THNAME_HRR) = thes_name
    )
  SELECT ARRAY[TD.EXPR] AS EXPRarr1
  FROM TERM_DICTIONARY TD, done_so_far f
  WHERE TD.TERMID = f.TERMID
    AND TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM TD.THNAME_DIC) = thes_name
    AND NOT EXISTS
      (SELECT *
       FROM done_so_far d
       WHERE d.NARROWER_TERMID = f.TERMID
      )

  DO -- for every row of the above query result,
    -- append the value of column EXPRarr1 to the array

    SET ret = ret || EXPRarr1;
END FOR L1;
RETURN ret ||
CASE
  WHEN startingTerm IS NULL OR
    thes_name IS NULL OR

```

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)
6.16.5 GetTopTerms Function

```
        CARDINALITY(ret) > 0 THEN
        CAST(ARRAY[] AS FT_WordOrPhrase
            ARRAY[ FT_MaxArrayLength])
    ELSE
        ARRAY[startingTerm]
    END;
END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_ThesNameLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a thesaurus name.
- 2) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The function *GetTopTerms*(*CHARACTER VARYING*, *FT_WordOrPhrase*) takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *CHARACTER VARYING* value *thes_name*,
 - b) an *FT_WordOrPhrase* value *startingTerm*.
- 2) *GetTopTerms*(*CHARACTER VARYING*, *FT_WordOrPhrase*) returns an array of *FT_WordOrPhrase* elements, which stands for a set of top terms.
- 3) *GetTopTerms*(*CHARACTER VARYING*, *FT_WordOrPhrase*, *INTEGER*) is equivalent to *GetBroaderTerms*(*CHARACTER VARYING*, *FT_WordOrPhrase*), using *thes_name*, *startingTerm*, and NULL as input arguments, and subsequently removing all terms for which there exists a broader term according to the thesaurus denoted by *thes_name*.
- 4) The term *startingTerm* is included in the result if no top terms are found in TERM_HIERARCHY.
- 5) It is implementation-defined, whether a check is made to ensure that the language specified in *startingTerm.Language* is compatible with the thesaurus as specified by *thes_name*, and if so, what kind of condition is raised in case of a language incompatibility.

6.17 FT_IsAbout Type and Routines

6.17.1 FT_IsAbout Type

Purpose

FT_IsAbout values provide for the construction of search patterns stating a topic in form of a *FullText* value, and for testing whether a text is pertinent to this value.

Definition

```
CREATE TYPE FT_IsAbout
  UNDER FT_Primary
  AS (
    wrdorphr FT_WordOrPhrase
  )
  INSTANTIABLE
  NOT FINAL

  OVERRIDING METHOD Contains(text FullText)
    RETURNS BOOLEAN,

  OVERRIDING METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
    RETURNS FT_Pattern,

  CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_IsAbout(wrdorphr FT_WordOrPhrase)
    RETURNS FT_IsAbout
    SELF AS RESULT
  LANGUAGE SQL
  DETERMINISTIC
  CONTAINS SQL
  CALLED ON NULL INPUT
```

Description

- 1) The *FT_IsAbout* type provides:
 - a) an attribute *wrdorphr*,
 - b) a method *Contains(FullText)*,
 - c) a method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*,
 - d) a method *FT_IsAbout(FullText)*.

6.17.2 Contains Method

Purpose

Search a *FullText* value for an *FT_IsAbout* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD Contains
  (text FullText)
  RETURNS BOOLEAN
  FOR FT_IsAbout
  BEGIN
    DECLARE result BOOLEAN;
    --
    -- !! See description
    --
    RETURN result;
  END
```

Description

- 1) The method *Contains(FullText)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *FullText* value *text*.
- 2) *Contains(FullText)* tests whether a given *FullText* item is pertinent to the *FT_WordOrPhrase* item of a given *FT_IsAbout* value. The result is subject to implementation-defined criteria of pertinence.

6.17.3 StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method

Purpose

Convert an *FT_IsAbout* value to an *FT_Pattern* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()  
  RETURNS FT_Pattern  
  FOR FT_IsAbout  
  BEGIN  
    DECLARE result CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength);  
  
    IF SELF.NOT_tag IS UNKNOWN THEN  
      RETURN CAST(NULL AS FT_Pattern)  
    END IF;  
  
    SET result = 'IS ABOUT '  
      || CAST(SELF.wrdorphr.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()  
        AS CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength));  
  
    IF NOT SELF.NOT_tag THEN  
      SET result = 'NOT ' || result;  
    END IF;  
    RETURN CAST(result AS FT_Pattern);  
  END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxPatternLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for the character representation of an *FT_Pattern* value.

Description

- 1) The method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* has no input parameters.
- 2) *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* returns an *FT_Pattern* value of the form <about expansion> or NOT <about expansion>.
- 3) If *SELF* or *SELF.wrdorphr* is the null value or *SELF.NOT_tag* is *Unknown*, then the result is the null value.

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)
6.17.4 FT_IsAbout Method

6.17.4 FT_IsAbout Method

Purpose

Return a specified *FT_IsAbout* value.

Definition

```
CREATE CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_IsAbout
  (wrdorphr FT_WordOrPhrase)
  RETURNS FT_IsAbout
  FOR FT_IsAbout
  RETURN SELF.wrdorphr(wrdorphr).NOT_tag(TRUE)
```

Description

- 1) The method *FT_IsAbout(FT_WordOrPhrase)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *FT_WordOrPhrase* value *wrdorphr*.

6.18 FT_Context Type and Routines

6.18.1 FT_Context Type

Purpose

FT_Context values represent context search patterns.

Definition

```
CREATE TYPE FT_Context
  UNDER FT_Primary
  AS (
    ArgArray FT_PhraseList ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength],
    du FullText_Token
  )
  INSTANTIABLE
  NOT FINAL

  OVERRIDING METHOD Contains(text FullText)
    RETURNS BOOLEAN,

  OVERRIDING METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
    RETURNS FT_Pattern,

  CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_Context
    (Arg1 FT_PhraseList,
     Arg2 FT_PhraseList,
     Arg3 FT_PhraseList ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength],
     DistanceUnit FullText_Token)
    RETURNS FT_Context
  SELF AS RESULT
  LANGUAGE SQL
  DETERMINISTIC
  CONTAINS SQL
  CALLED ON NULL INPUT
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The *FT_Context* type provides:
 - a) an attribute *ArgArray*,
 - b) an attribute *du*,
 - c) a method *Contains(FullText)*,
 - d) a method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*,
 - e) a method *FT_Context(FT_PhraseList, FT_PhraseList, FT_PhraseList ARRAY, FullText_Token)*.

6.18.2 Contains Method

Purpose

Search a *FullText* value for an *FT_Context* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD Contains
(text FullText)
RETURNS BOOLEAN
FOR FT_Context
BEGIN
    DECLARE result BOOLEAN;
    DECLARE ftl FullText ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength];
    DECLARE segno INTEGER;
    DECLARE argno INTEGER;

    IF SELF IS NULL THEN
        SET argno = CAST(NULL AS INTEGER);
    ELSEIF SELF.ArgArray IS NULL THEN
        SET argno = CAST(NULL AS INTEGER)
    ELSE
        SET argno = CARDINALITY(SELF.ArgArray);
    END IF;

    SET ftl = text.Segmentize(SELF.du);

    IF ftl IS NULL THEN
        SET segno = CAST(NULL AS INTEGER);
    ELSE
        SET segno = CARDINALITY(ftl);
    END IF;

    IF segno IS NULL THEN
        RETURN UNKNOWN;
    ELSEIF segno = 0 THEN
        SET RESULT = FALSE;
    ELSEIF (segno <> 0 AND argno = 0) THEN
        SET RESULT = TRUE;
    ELSEIF (segno <> 0 AND argno IS NULL) THEN
        SET RESULT = UNKNOWN;
    ELSE
        SET RESULT =

        (WITH RECURSIVE SegTab(ind, seg) AS
            (VALUES(1, ftl[1])
             UNION
             SELECT ind + 1, ftl[ind + 1]
             FROM SegTab
             WHERE ind < segno
            ),
         ContextTab(ind, ca) AS
            (VALUES(1, SELF.ArgArray[1])
             UNION
             SELECT ind + 1, SELF.ArgArray[ind + 1]
             FROM ContextTab
             WHERE ind < argno
            ),
         Temp(BasI) AS
            (SELECT MAX(TTE.BasI)
             FROM (VALUES(1) UNION
                  SELECT
```

```

        (SELECT MIN(TTU.BasI)
         FROM (VALUES(3) UNION
              SELECT
                CASE ca.Contains(seg)
                 WHEN FALSE THEN 1
                 WHEN TRUE  THEN 3
                 ELSE          2
                END
              FROM ContextTab ct(ind, ca)) AS TTU(BasI))
         FROM SegTab st(ind, seg)) AS TTE(BasI)
    )
    SELECT ARRAY[FALSE, TRUE, UNKNOWN][BasI]
    FROM Temp
    );
END IF;
RETURN (SELF.NOT_tag = result);
END

```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The method *Contains(FullText)* takes the following input parameters:

- a) a *FullText* value *text*.

- 2) Case:

- a) If either *text.Segmentize(SELF.du)* or *SELF* or *SELF.ArgArray* is the null value, then the result of *Contains(FullText)* is Unknown.
- b) Otherwise, let *n* be the number of elements of *SELF.ArgArray*, and for *i* ranging from 1 to *n*, let *CA_i* be the elements of *SELF.ArgArray*. Depending on the distance unit *SELF.du* specified, let *m* be the number of sentences (paragraphs) of *text*, and for *j* ranging from 1 to *m*, let *SEG_j* be the *FullText* values representing these sentences (paragraphs).

Case:

- i) If there exists some *SEG_j*, such that the result of

$$CA_i.Contains(SEG_j)$$

is True, for every *Ca_i*, then let *R* be True.

- i) If for every *SEG_j*, such that the result of

$$CA_i.Contains(SEG_j)$$

is False, for at least one *Ca_i*, then let *R* be False.

- iii) Otherwise, let *R* be Unknown.

- 3) *Contains(FullText)* returns:

Case:

- a) Unknown, if *SELF.NOT_tag* is Unknown.
- b) NOT *R*, if *SELF.NOT_tag* is False.

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)
6.18.2 Contains Method

- c) Otherwise, *R*.

6.18.3 StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method

Purpose

Convert an *FT_Context* value to an *FT_Pattern* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
  RETURNS FT_Pattern
  FOR FT_Context
  BEGIN
    DECLARE result CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength);
    DECLARE i INTEGER;
    DECLARE n INTEGER;

    IF SELF.ArgArray IS NULL THEN
      RETURN NULL;
    ELSEIF SELF.NOT_tag IS UNKNOWN THEN
      RETURN NULL;
    END IF;

    SET n = CARDINALITY(SELF.ArgArray);
    SET result =
      CAST(SELF.ArgArray[1].StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
        AS CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength)
        || 'IN SAME '
        || TRIM(BOTH ' ' FROM SELF.du)
        || ' AS ' ||
      CAST(SELF.ArgArray[2].StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
        AS CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength)));

    SET i = 3;

    L1: WHILE (n >= i) DO
      SET result = result || ' AND ' ||
        CAST(SELF.ArgArray[i].StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
          AS CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength));
      SET i = i + 1;
    END WHILE L1;

    IF NOT SELF.NOT_tag THEN
      SET result = 'NOT ' || result;
    END IF;
    RETURN CAST(result AS FT_Pattern);
  END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxPatternLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for the character representation of an *FT_Pattern* value.

Description

- 1) The method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* has no input parameters.
- 2) *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* returns an *FT_Pattern* value of the form <context condition> or NOT <context condition>.
- 3) The result is the null value in the following cases:

6.18.3 StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method

- a) *SELF* or *SELF.ArgArray* is the null value or *SELF.NOT_tag* is Unknown.
- b) For some element *E* of *SELF.ArgArray*, *E.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* is the null value.

6.18.4 FT_Context Method

Purpose

Return a specified *FT_Context* value.

Definition

```
CREATE CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_Context
  (Arg1 FT_PhraseList,
   Arg2 FT_PhraseList,
   Arg3 FT_PhraseList ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength],
   DistanceUnit FullText_Token)
RETURNS FT_Context
FOR FT_Context
RETURN SELF.
  ArgArray(ARRAY[Arg1, Arg2] || Arg3).du(DistanceUnit).
  NOT_tag(TRUE)
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The method *FT_Context(FT_PhraseList, FT_PhraseList, FT_PhraseList ARRAY, FullText_Token)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) an *FT_PhraseList* value *Arg1*,
 - b) an *FT_PhraseList* value *Arg2*,
 - c) a (possibly empty) array *Arg3* the elements of which are *FT_PhraseList* values,
 - d) a *FullText_Token* value *DistanceUnit*.
- 2) All arguments may be the null value.

6.19 FT_ParExpr Type and Routines

6.19.1 FT_ParExpr Type

Purpose

FT_ParExpr provides for the construction of *FT_Term* patterns as *FT_Primary* values of the type *FT_ParExpr*, for searching occurrences of *FT_ParExpr* patterns in *FullText* items, and for turning *FT_ParExpr* values into equivalent *FT_Pattern* values.

Definition

```
CREATE TYPE FT_ParExpr
  UNDER FT_Primary
  AS (
    Body FT_Expr
  )
  INSTANTIABLE
  NOT FINAL

  OVERRIDING METHOD Contains(text FullText)
    RETURNS BOOLEAN,

  OVERRIDING METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
    RETURNS FT_Pattern,

  CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_ParExpr(expr FT_Expr)
    RETURNS FT_ParExpr
    SELF AS RESULT
  LANGUAGE SQL
  DETERMINISTIC
  CONTAINS SQL
  CALLED ON NULL INPUT
```

Description

- 1) The *FT_ParExpr* type provides:
 - a) an attribute *Body*,
 - b) a method *Contains(FullText)*,
 - c) a method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*,
 - d) a method *FT_ParExpr(FT_Expr)*.

6.19.2 Contains Method

Purpose

Search a *FullText* value for an *FT_ParExpr* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD Contains
  (text FullText)
  RETURNS BOOLEAN
  FOR FT_ParExpr
  RETURN SELF.Body.Contains(text)
```

Description

- 1) The method *Contains(FullText)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) a *FullText* value *text*.
- 2) The result of *SELF.Contains(text)* is the result of *SELF.Body.Contains(text)*.

6.19.3 StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method

Purpose

Convert an *FT_ParExpr* value to an *FT_Pattern* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
  RETURNS(FT_Pattern)
  FOR FT_ParExpr
  BEGIN
    DECLARE result CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength);

    IF SELF.NOT_tag IS UNKNOWN THEN
      RETURN CAST(NULL AS FT_Pattern);
    END IF;

    SET result = '(' || CAST(SELF.Body.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
      AS CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength)) || ')';

    IF NOT SELF.NOT_tag THEN
      SET result = 'NOT ' || result;
    END IF;
    RETURN CAST(result AS FT_Pattern);
  END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxPatternLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for the character representation of an *FT_Pattern* value.

Description

- 1) The method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* has no input parameters.
- 2) *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* returns an *FT_Pattern* value of the form <left paren> <search expression> <right paren> except for the following cases:
 - a) If *SELF* is the null value or *SELF.NOT_tag* is the null value, then the result is the null value.
 - b) If *SELF.Body.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* is the null value, then the result is the null value.

6.19.4 FT_ParExpr Method

Purpose

Return a specified *FT_ParExpr* value.

Definition

```
CREATE CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_ParExpr  
  (expr FT_Expr)  
  RETURNS FT_ParExpr  
  FOR FT_ParExpr  
  RETURN SELF.Body(expr).NOT_tag(TRUE)
```

Description

- 1) The method *FT_ParExpr(FT_Expr)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) an *FT_Expr* value *expr*.

6.20 FT_Term Type and Routines

6.20.1 FT_Term Type

Purpose

FT_Term values represent search patterns consisting of a sequence of *FT_Primary* search patterns; all items in the list are intended to be matched.

Definition

```
CREATE TYPE FT_Term
AS (
    ConjunctsArray FT_Primary ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]
)
INSTANTIABLE
NOT FINAL

METHOD Contains(text FullText)
RETURNS BOOLEAN
LANGUAGE SQL
DETERMINISTIC
CONTAINS SQL
CALLED ON NULL INPUT,

METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
RETURNS FT_Pattern
LANGUAGE SQL
DETERMINISTIC
CONTAINS SQL
CALLED ON NULL INPUT,

CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_Term
(pArray FT_Primary ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength])
RETURNS FT_Term
SELF AS RESULT
LANGUAGE SQL
DETERMINISTIC
CONTAINS SQL
CALLED ON NULL INPUT
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The *FT_Term* type provides:
 - a) an attribute *ConjunctsArray*,
 - b) a method *Contains(FullText)*,
 - c) a method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*,
 - d) a method *FT_Term(FT_Primary ARRAY)*.

6.20.2 Contains Method

Purpose

Search a *FullText* value for an *FT_Term* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD Contains
  (text FullText)
  RETURNS BOOLEAN
  FOR FT_Term
  BEGIN
    DECLARE i INTEGER;
    DECLARE result BOOLEAN;

    IF SELF IS NULL THEN
      RETURN UNKNOWN;
    ELSEIF SELF.ConjunctsArray IS NULL THEN
      RETURN UNKNOWN;
    END IF;
    SET i = 1 ;
    SET result = TRUE;
  L1: WHILE (i <= CARDINALITY(SELF.ConjunctsArray))
      AND (result IS TRUE OR result IS UNKNOWN) DO
      SET result = result
        AND SELF.ConjunctsArray[i].Contains(text);

      SET i = i + 1;
    END WHILE L1;
    RETURN result;
  END
```

Description

1) The method *Contains(FullText)* takes the following input parameters:

a) a *FullText* value *text*.

2) The result of *Contains(FullText)* is:

Case:

a) Unknown, if *SELF* or *SELF.ConjunctsArray* is the null value.

b) True, if for all *FT_Primary* elements *P* of *SELF.ConjunctsArray*

P.Contains(text)

returns True.

c) False, if at least one *FT_Primary* element *P* of *SELF.ConjunctsArray* is such that

P.Contains(text)

returns False.

d) Otherwise, Unknown.

6.20.3 StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method

Purpose

Convert an *FT_Term* value to an *FT_Pattern* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
  RETURNS FT_Pattern
  FOR FT_Term
  BEGIN
    DECLARE i INTEGER;
    DECLARE result CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength);

    SET i = 1;
    SET result = '';

    L1: WHILE(i <= CARDINALITY(SELF.ConjunctsArray)) DO
      SET result = result
        || CAST(
          SELF.ConjunctsArray[i].StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
          AS CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength))
        || '&';
      SET i = i + 1;
    END WHILE L1;

    SET result = TRIM(TRAILING '&' FROM result);
    RETURN CAST(result AS FT_Pattern);
  END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxPatternLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for the character representation of an *FT_Pattern* value.

Description

- 1) The method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* has no input parameters.
- 2) *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* returns an *FT_Pattern* value of the form <search term> except for the following cases:
 - a) If *SELF.ConjunctsArray* is empty, the result is represented by an empty string.
 - b) If *SELF* or *SELF.ConjunctsArray* is the null value, then the result is the null value.
 - c) If for any element *E* of *SELF.ConjunctsArray*, *E.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* is the null value, then the result is the null value.

6.20.4 FT_Term Method

Purpose

Return a specified *FT_Term* value.

Definition

```
CREATE CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_Term
  (pArray FT_Primary ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength])
  RETURNS FT_Term
  FOR FT_Term
  RETURN SELF.ConjunctsArray(pArray)
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The method *FT_Term(FT_Primary ARRAY)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) an array *pArray* with elements of type *FT_Primary*.
- 2) *pArray* may be empty or the null value.

NOTE 19 The definition of *FT_Term* values is intentionally more general than the definition of the corresponding <search term>s.

6.21 FT_Expr Type and Routines

6.21.1 FT_Expr Type

Purpose

FT_Expr values represent search patterns consisting of a sequence of *FT_Term* search patterns; at least one item in such a list is intended to be matched.

Definition

```
CREATE TYPE FT_Expr
AS (
    DisjunctsArray FT_Term ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]
)
INSTANTIABLE
NOT FINAL

METHOD Contains(text FullText)
RETURNS BOOLEAN
LANGUAGE SQL
DETERMINISTIC
CONTAINS SQL
CALLED ON NULL INPUT,

METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
RETURNS FT_Pattern
LANGUAGE SQL
DETERMINISTIC
CONTAINS SQL
CALLED ON NULL INPUT,

CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_Expr
(tArray FT_Term ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength])
RETURNS FT_Expr
SELF AS RESULT
LANGUAGE SQL
DETERMINISTIC
CONTAINS SQL
CALLED ON NULL INPUT
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The *FT_Expr* type provides:
 - a) an attribute *DisjunctsArray*,
 - b) a method *Contains(FullText)*,
 - c) a method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*,
 - d) a method *FT_Expr(FT_Term ARRAY)*,

6.21.2 Contains Method

Purpose

Search a *FullText* value for an *FT_Expr* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD Contains
(text FullText)
RETURNS BOOLEAN
FOR FT_Expr
BEGIN
    DECLARE i INTEGER ;
    DECLARE result BOOLEAN;

    IF SELF IS NULL THEN
        RETURN UNKNOWN;
    ELSEIF SELF.DisjunctsArray IS NULL THEN
        RETURN UNKNOWN;
    END IF;

    SET i = 1 ;
    SET result = FALSE;
L1: WHILE (i <= CARDINALITY(SELF.DisjunctsArray))
        AND (result IS FALSE OR result IS UNKNOWN) DO
        SET result = result
            OR SELF.DisjunctsArray[i].Contains(text);
        SET i = i + 1;
    END WHILE L1;
    RETURN result;
END
```

Description

1) The method *Contains(FullText)* takes the following input parameters:

a) a *FullText* value *text*.

2) The result of *Contains(FullText)* is:

Case:

a) Unknown, if *SELF* or *SELF.DisjunctsArray* is the null value.

b) True, if for at least one *FT_Term* element *T* of *SELF.DisjunctsArray*

T.Contains(text)

returns True.

c) False, if for all *FT_Term* elements *T* of *SELF.DisjunctsArray*

T.Contains(text)

returns False.

d) Otherwise, Unknown.

6.21.3 StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method

Purpose

Convert an *FT_Expr* value to an *FT_Pattern* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
  RETURNS FT_Pattern
  FOR FT_Expr
  BEGIN
    DECLARE i INTEGER;
    DECLARE result CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength);

    IF SELF IS NULL OR SELF.DisjunctsArray IS NULL THEN
      RETURN CAST(NULL AS FT_Pattern);
    END IF;

    SET i      = 1;
    SET result = '';

    L1: WHILE(i <= CARDINALITY(SELF.DisjunctsArray)) DO
      SET result = result
        || CAST(
           SELF.DisjunctsArray[i].StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
           AS CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength))
        || '|';
      SET i = i + 1;
    END WHILE L1;

    SET result = TRIM(TRAILING '|' FROM result);
    RETURN CAST(result AS FT_Pattern);
  END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxPatternLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for the character representation of an *FT_Pattern* value.

Description

- 1) The method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* has no input parameters.
- 2) *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* returns an *FT_Pattern* value of the form <search expression> except for the following cases:
 - a) If *SELF.DisjunctsArray* is empty, the result is represented by an empty string.
 - b) If *SELF* or *SELF.DisjunctsArray* is the null value, then the result is the null value.
 - c) If for any element *E* of *SELF.DisjunctsArray*, *E.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* is the null value, then the result is the null value.

6.21.4 FT_Expr Method

Purpose

Return a specified *FT_Expr* value.

Definition

```
CREATE CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_Expr  
  (tArray FT_Term ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength])  
  RETURNS FT_Expr  
  FOR FT_Expr  
  RETURN SELF.DisjunctsArray(tArray)
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The method *FT_Expr(FT_Term ARRAY)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) an array *tArray* with elements of type *FT_Term*.
- 2) *tArray* may be empty or the null value.

NOTE 20 The definition of *FT_Expr* values is intentionally more general than the definition of the corresponding <search expression>s.

6.22 FT_PhraseList Type and Routines

6.22.1 FT_PhraseList Type

Purpose

FT_PhraseList type provides facilities for the construction of a structured search pattern that represents a multiset element type of which is *FT_Phrase*, and for testing whether at least one of the members of such a multiset occurs in a given *FullText* value.

Definition

```
CREATE TYPE FT_PhraseList
AS (
    Phrases FT_Phrase ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength]
)
INSTANTIABLE
NOT FINAL

METHOD Contains(text FullText)
    RETURNS BOOLEAN
    LANGUAGE SQL
    DETERMINISTIC
    CONTAINS SQL
    CALLED ON NULL INPUT,

METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()
    RETURNS FT_Pattern
    LANGUAGE SQL
    DETERMINISTIC
    CONTAINS SQL
    CALLED ON NULL INPUT,

CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_PhraseList
    (phrases FT_Phrase ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength])
    RETURNS FT_PhraseList
    SELF AS RESULT
    LANGUAGE SQL
    DETERMINISTIC
    CONTAINS SQL
    CALLED ON NULL INPUT
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The *FT_PhraseList* type provides:
 - a) an attribute *Phrases*,
 - b) a method *Contains(FullText)*,
 - c) a method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()*,
 - d) a method *FT_PhraseList(FT_Phrase ARRAY)*.

6.22.2 Contains Method

Purpose

Search a *FullText* value for an *FT_PhraseList* value.

Definition

```

CREATE METHOD Contains
  (text FullText)
  RETURNS BOOLEAN
  FOR FT_PhraseList
  BEGIN
    DECLARE i INTEGER ;
    DECLARE result BOOLEAN;
    DECLARE TokArray FullText_Token ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength];
    DECLARE lenp INTEGER;
    DECLARE lent INTEGER;

    IF SELF IS NULL THEN
      SET lenp = CAST(NULL AS INTEGER);
    ELSE
      SET lenp = CARDINALITY(SELF.Phrases);
    END IF;

    SET TokArray = text.Tokenize();
    IF TokArray IS NULL THEN
      SET lent = CAST(NULL AS INTEGER);
    ELSE
      SET lenp = CARDINALITY(TokArray);
    END IF;
    IF lent IS NULL AND lenp IS NULL THEN
      RETURN UNKNOWN;
    ELSEIF lent = 0 OR lenp = 0 THEN
      SET result = FALSE;
    ELSEIF lent <> 0 AND lenp IS NULL
      OR lent IS NULL AND lenp <> 0 THEN
      RETURN UNKNOWN;
    ELSE SET result =

    (WITH RECURSIVE phr1Tab(ind, phr) AS
      (VALUES(1, SELF.Phrases[1])
       UNION
       SELECT ind + 1, SELF.Phrases[ind + 1]
        FROM phr1Tab
        WHERE ind < lenp
       ),
     Temp(BasI) AS
      (SELECT MAX(BasI)
       FROM (VALUES(1) UNION
            SELECT
              CASE phr.Contains(text)
                WHEN FALSE THEN 1
                WHEN TRUE THEN 3
                ELSE 2
              END
             FROM phr1Tab pt(ind, phr)) AS TT(BasI)
       )
     SELECT ARRAY[FALSE, UNKNOWN, TRUE][BasI] FROM Temp
    );
    END IF;
    RETURN result;
  END

```


Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The method *Contains (FullText)* takes the following input parameters:

- a) a *FullText* value *text*.

- 2) The result of *Contains (FullText)* is:

Case:

- a) False, if *SELF.Phrases* is empty or if for every element *P* of *SELF.Phrases* the result of

P.Contains(text)

is False.

- b) True, if there exists at least one element *P* of *SELF.Phrases* such that the result of

P.Contains(text)

is True.

- c) Otherwise, Unknown.

In particular, this result is obtained if:

- i) Any of *text* or *text.Tokenize()* is the null value, and *SELF* or *SELF.Phrases* is the null value.
- ii) *text* or *text.Tokenize()* is the null value, but *SELF.Phrases* is a non-empty array.
- iii) *SELF* or *SELF.Phrases* is the null value, but *text.Tokenize()* is a non-empty array.

6.22.3 StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern Method

Purpose

Convert an *FT_PhraseList* value to an *FT_Pattern* value.

Definition

```
CREATE METHOD StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()  
  RETURNS FT_Pattern  
  FOR FT_PhraseList  
  BEGIN  
    DECLARE i INTEGER;  
    DECLARE result CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength);  
    DECLARE len INTEGER;  
  
    IF SELF.Phrases IS NULL THEN  
      RETURN CAST(NULL AS FT_Pattern);  
    ELSE  
      SET len = CARDINALITY(SELF.Phrases);  
    END IF;  
  
    SET i = 1;  
    SET result = '(';  
  
    L1: WHILE(i <= len) DO  
      SET result = result  
        || CAST(  
          SELF.Phrases[i].StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()  
          AS CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxPatternLength))  
        || ',';  
      SET i = i + 1;  
    END WHILE L1;  
  
    SET result = TRIM(TRAILING ',' FROM result) || ')';  
    RETURN CAST(result AS FT_Pattern);  
  END
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxPatternLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for the character representation of an *FT_Pattern* value.

Description

- 1) The method *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* has no input parameters.
- 2) *StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* returns an *FT_Pattern* value of the form <text literal list> except for the following cases:
 - a) If *SELF* or *SELF.Phrases* is the null value, then the result is the null value.
 - b) If for any element *E* of *SELF.Phrases*, *E.StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern()* is the null value, then the result is the null value.

6.22.4 FT_PhraseList Method

Purpose

Return a specified *FT_PhraseList* value.

Definition

```
CREATE CONSTRUCTOR METHOD FT_PhraseList
  (phrases FT_Phrase ARRAY[FT_MaxArrayLength])
  RETURNS FT_PhraseList
  FOR FT_PhraseList
  RETURN SELF.Phrases(phrases)
```

Definitional Rules

1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.

Description

- 1) The method *FT_PhraseList(FT_Phrase ARRAY)* takes the following input parameters:
 - a) an array *phrases* with elements of type *FT_Phrase*.

Blank page

7 FullText_Token Type and Routines

7.1 FullText_Token Type

Purpose

The *FullText_Token* domain is used to define valid tokens.

Definition

```
CREATE DOMAIN FullText_Token
  AS CHARACTER VARYING(FT_MaxTokenLength)
  CHECK(p(VALUE))
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_MaxTokenLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for the character representation of a *FullText_Token* value.

Description

- 1) The function *p* returns True if and only if the character string *VALUE* is a valid token. It is implementation-defined whether a character string is a valid token.

Blank page

8 SQL/MM Full-Text Thesaurus Schema

8.1 Introduction

The only purpose of the SQL/MM Full-Text thesaurus schema is to provide a data model to support understanding of the thesaurus related functions.

The base tables are all defined in a <schema definition> for the schema named *FT_THESAURUS*. The table definitions are as complete as the definitional power of ISO/IEC 9075 allows. The table definitions are supplemented with assertions where appropriate. Each description comprises three parts:

1. The function of the definition is stated.
2. The SQL definition of the object is presented as a <table definition>.
3. An explanation of the object.

The specification provides only a model of the base tables that are required, and does not imply that an implementation shall provide the functionality in the manner described in this clause.

8.2 FT_THESAURUS Schema

Purpose

Create the schema that is to contain the base tables that underlie the SQL/MM Full-Text Thesaurus Schema.

Definition

```
CREATE SCHEMA FT_THESAURUS  
  AUTHORIZATION FT_THESAURUS
```


8.3 TERM_DICTIONARY base table

Purpose

The TERM_DICTIONARY base table has one row for each term referenced in the SQL/MM Full-Text Thesaurus Schema of the catalog. These are all those terms that can be found in the TERM_HIERARCHY, TERM_SYNONYM and TERM_RELATED tables.

Definition

```
CREATE TABLE TERM_DICTIONARY
(
  TERMID      INTEGER NOT NULL DEFAULT 0,
  EXPR       FT_WordOrPhrase,
  THNAME_DIC CHARACTER VARYING(FT_ThesNameLength) NOT NULL,

  PRIMARY KEY (TERMID, THNAME_DIC)
)
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_ThesNameLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a thesaurus name.

Description

- 1) The number of available thesauri and their names are implementation-defined.

8.4 TERM_HIERARCHY base table

Purpose

The TERM_HIERARCHY base table has one row for each pair of terms that form a broader-narrower term pair in a given thesaurus.

Definition

```
CREATE TABLE TERM_HIERARCHY
(
  TERMID                INTEGER NOT NULL,
  NARROWER_TERMID      INTEGER NOT NULL,
  THNAME_HRR           CHARACTER VARYING(FT_ThesNameLength) NOT NULL,

  PRIMARY KEY(TERMID, NARROWER_TERMID, THNAME_HRR),

  FOREIGN KEY(NARROWER_TERMID, THNAME_HRR) REFERENCES TERM_DICTIONARY,

  FOREIGN KEY(TERMID, THNAME_HRR) REFERENCES TERM_DICTIONARY
)
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_ThesNameLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a thesaurus name.

Description

- 1) The number of available thesauri and their names are implementation-defined.

8.5 TERM_SYNONYM base table

Purpose

The TERM_SYNONYM base table has one row for each pair of terms that form a synonym term pair. Each row also indicates the preferred term for the synonym term pair in a given thesaurus.

Definition

```
CREATE TABLE TERM_SYNONYM
(
  TERMID                INTEGER NOT NULL,
  SYNONYM_TERMID        INTEGER NOT NULL,
  PREFERRED_TERMID      INTEGER,
  THNAME_SYN            CHARACTER VARYING(FT_ThesNameLength) NOT NULL,

  PRIMARY KEY(TERMID, SYNONYM_TERMID, THNAME_SYN),

  FOREIGN KEY(SYNONYM_TERMID, THNAME_SYN) REFERENCES TERM_DICTIONARY,

  FOREIGN KEY(PREFERRED_TERMID, THNAME_SYN) REFERENCES TERM_DICTIONARY,

  FOREIGN KEY(TERMID, THNAME_SYN) REFERENCES TERM_DICTIONARY
)
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_ThesNameLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a thesaurus name.

Description

- 1) The number of available thesauri and their names are implementation-defined.

8.6 TERM_RELATED base table

Purpose

The TERM_RELATED base table has one row for each pair of terms that form a related term pair in a given thesaurus.

Definition

```
CREATE TABLE TERM_RELATED
(
  TERMID                INTEGER NOT NULL,
  RELATED_TERMID        INTEGER NOT NULL,
  THNAME_REL            CHARACTER VARYING(FT_ThesNameLength) NOT NULL,

  PRIMARY KEY(TERMID, RELATED_TERMID, THNAME_REL),

  FOREIGN KEY(RELATED_TERMID, THNAME_REL) REFERENCES TERM_DICTIONARY,

  FOREIGN KEY(TERMID, THNAME_REL) REFERENCES TERM_DICTIONARY
)
```

Definitional Rules

- 1) *FT_ThesNameLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a thesaurus name.

Description

- 1) The number of available thesauri and their names are implementation-defined.

9 SQL/MM Full-Text Information Schema

9.1 Introduction

The SQL/MM Full-Text Information Schema views are defined as being in a schema named *FT_INFORMATION_SCHEMA* enabling these views to be accessed in the same way as any other tables in any other schema. `SELECT` privilege on all of these views is granted to `PUBLIC WITH GRANT OPTION` so that they can be queried by any user and so that `SELECT` privilege can be further granted on views that reference these Information Schema views. No other privilege is granted on them so they cannot be updated.

An implementation may define objects that are associated with *FT_INFORMATION_SCHEMA* that are not defined in this Clause. An implementation may also add columns to tables that are defined in this Clause.

9.2 FT_FEATURES view

Purpose

Identify the optional features and the implementation-defined user-visible constants.

Definition

```
CREATE VIEW FT_FEATURES
AS SELECT * FROM FT_DEFINITION_SCHEMA.FT_FEATURES
```

9.3 FT_Schemata view

Purpose

Identify the schemata which include the descriptors of a complete set of types, methods, and functions that are necessary to support the functionality of this part of ISO/IEC 13249.

Definition

```
CREATE VIEW FT_SCHEMATA
AS SELECT
    F.CATALOG_NAME,
    F.SCHEMA_NAME,
    S.SCHEMA_OWNER,
    S.DEFAULT_CHARACTER_SET_CATALOG,
    S.DEFAULT_CHARACTER_SET_SCHEMA,
    S.DEFAULT_CHARACTER_SET_NAME
FROM FT_DEFINITION_SCHEMA.FT_SCHEMATA F,
    INFORMATION_SCHEMA.SCHEMATA S
WHERE F.CATALOG_NAME = S.CATALOG_NAME AND
    F.SCHEMA_NAME = S.SCHEMA_NAME
```

Description

- 1) A value of SCHEMA_OWNER identifies the owner of schema identified by the CATALOG_NAME and SCHEMA_NAME values.
- 2) The character set identified by the DEFAULT_CHARACTER_SET_CATALOG, DEFAULT_CHARACTER_SET_SCHEMA, and DEFAULT_CHARACTER_SET_NAME values is the character set under which the types, methods, and functions of this part of ISO/IEC 13249 have been created that are included in the schema identified by the CATALOG_NAME and SCHEMA_NAME values.
- 3) The values of SCHEMA_NAME are the unqualified schema names of the schemata in the catalog which include the descriptors of a complete set of types, methods, and functions that are necessary to support the functionality of this part of ISO/IEC 13249.
- 4) INFORMATION_SCHEMA.SCHEMATA is defined in part 2 of ISO/IEC 9075.

10 SQL/MM Full-Text Definition Schema

10.1 Introduction

The only purpose of the SQL/MM Full-Text Definition Schema is to provide a data model to support the *FT_INFORMATION_SCHEMA* and to assist understanding.

The base tables of the SQL/MM Full-Text Definition Schema are defined as being in a schema named *FT_DEFINITION_SCHEMA*. The table definitions are as complete as the definitional power of ISO/IEC 9075 allows. The table definitions are supplemented with assertions where appropriate. Each description comprises three parts:

1. The function of the definition is stated.
2. The SQL definition of the object is presented as a <table definition>.
3. An explanation of the object.

The specification provides only a model of the base tables that are required, and does not imply that an implementation shall provide the functionality in the manner described in this clause.

10.2 FT_FEATURES base table

Function

Identify the supported features and the implementation-defined user-visible constants.

Definition

```

CREATE TABLE FT_FEATURES
(
  FT_FEATURENAME          CHARACTER VARYING(256),
  FT_FEATUREVALUE        CHARACTER VARYING(256),

  CONSTRAINT FT_FEATURES_PRIMARY_KEY PRIMARY KEY(FT_FEATURENAME),

  CONSTRAINT FT_FEATURES_CHECK CHECK
    (CASE FT_FEATURENAME
      WHEN 'FT_MaxTextLength' THEN
        (0 < CAST(FT_FEATUREVALUE AS INTEGER))
      WHEN 'FT_MaxLanguageLength' THEN
        (0 < CAST(FT_FEATUREVALUE AS INTEGER))
      WHEN 'FT_DefaultLanguage' THEN
        (CHARACTER_LENGTH(FT_FEATUREVALUE) <=
          CAST ((SELECT FT_FEATUREVALUE FROM FT_Features
                WHERE FT_FEATURENAME = 'FT_MaxLanguageLength')
              AS INTEGER))
      WHEN 'FT_ThesNameLength' THEN
        (0 < CAST(FT_FEATUREVALUE AS INTEGER))
      WHEN 'FT_ThesTermLength' THEN
        (0 < CAST(FT_FEATUREVALUE AS INTEGER))
      WHEN 'FT_MinRankValue' THEN
        (0.0 <= CAST(FT_FEATUREVALUE AS DOUBLE PRECISION))
      WHEN 'FT_MaxRankValue' THEN
        (0.0 <= CAST(FT_FEATUREVALUE AS DOUBLE PRECISION)) AND
        CAST ((SELECT FT_FEATUREVALUE FROM FT_Features
              WHERE FT_FEATURENAME = 'FT_MinRankValue')
            AS DOUBLE PRECISION ) <=
        CAST ((SELECT FT_FEATUREVALUE FROM FT_Features
              WHERE FT_FEATURENAME = 'FT_MaxRankValue')
            AS DOUBLE PRECISION)
      WHEN 'FT_ProximityCharacters'
        THEN (FT_FEATUREVALUE IN ('YES', 'NO'))
      WHEN 'FT_ProximityWords'
        THEN (FT_FEATUREVALUE IN ('YES', 'NO'))
      WHEN 'FT_ProximitySentences'
        THEN (FT_FEATUREVALUE IN ('YES', 'NO'))
      WHEN 'FT_ProximityParagraphs'
        THEN (FT_FEATUREVALUE IN ('YES', 'NO'))
      WHEN 'FT_ContextSentence'
        THEN (FT_FEATUREVALUE IN ('YES', 'NO'))
      WHEN 'FT_ContextParagraph'
        THEN (FT_FEATUREVALUE IN ('YES', 'NO'))
      ELSE
        FALSE
    )
  )
)

```


ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)
10.2 FT_FEATURES base table

Description

- 1) If the value of *FT_FEATURENAME* is 'FT_MaxTextLength', then the value of
`CAST (FT_FEATUREVALUE AS INTEGER)`
is the supported maximum length (in characters) of the *Contents* attribute of a *FullText* value.
- 2) If the value of *FT_FEATURENAME* is 'FT_MaxLanguageLength' , then the value of
`CAST (FT_FEATUREVALUE AS INTEGER)`
is the supported maximum length (in characters) of a language value.
- 3) If the value of *FT_FEATURENAME* is 'FT_DefaultLanguage' , then the value of *FT_FEATUREVALUE*
is the default language and the value of
`CHARACTER_LENGTH (FT_FEATUREVALUE)`
is less than or equal to *FT_MaxLanguageLength*.
- 4) If the value of *FT_FEATURENAME* is 'FT_ThesNameLength', then the value of
`CAST (FT_FEATUREVALUE AS INTEGER)`
is the maximum supported length (in characters) of a thesaurus name.
- 5) If the value of *FT_FEATURENAME* is 'FT_ThesTermLength', then the value of
`CAST (FT_FEATUREVALUE AS INTEGER)`
is the maximum supported length (in characters) of a thesaurus term.
- 6) If the value of *FT_FEATURENAME* is 'FT_MinRankValue', then the value of
`CAST (FT_FEATUREVALUE AS DOUBLE PRECISION)`
is the minimum value that can be returned by the rank method.
- 7) If the value of *FT_FEATURENAME* is 'FT_MaxRankValue', then the value of
`CAST (FT_FEATUREVALUE AS DOUBLE PRECISION)`
is the maximum value that can be returned by the rank method.
- 8) If the value of *FT_FEATURENAME* is 'FT_ProximityCharacters', then the values of
FT_FEATUREVALUE have the following meanings:

'YES' Distances in terms of the document unit CHARACTERS supported in <Proximity expansion>.

'NO' Distances in terms of the document unit CHARACTERS not supported in <Proximity expansion>.
- 9) If the value of *FT_FEATURENAME* is 'FT_ProximityWords', then the values of *FT_FEATUREVALUE*
have the following meanings:

'YES' Distances in terms of the document unit WORDS supported in <Proximity expansion>.

'NO' Distances in terms of the document unit WORDS not supported in <Proximity expansion>.

- 10) If the value of *FT_FEATURENAME* is 'FT_ContextSentence', then the values of *FT_FEATUREVALUE* have the following meanings:
- 'YES' Distances in terms of the document unit SENTENCE supported in <context condition>.
 - 'NO' Distances in terms of the document unit SENTENCE not supported in <context condition>.
- 11) If the value of *FT_FEATURENAME* is 'FT_ProximitySentences', then the values of *FT_FEATUREVALUE* have the following meanings:
- 'YES' Distances in terms of the document unit SENTENCES supported in <Proximity expansion>.
 - 'NO' Distances in terms of the document unit SENTENCES not supported in <Proximity expansion>.
- 12) If the value of *FT_FEATURENAME* is 'FT_ContextParagraph', then the values of *FT_FEATUREVALUE* have the following meanings:
- 'YES' Distances in terms of the document unit PARAGRAPH supported in <context condition>.
 - 'NO' Distances in terms of the document unit PARAGRAPH not supported in <context condition>.
- 13) If the value of *FT_FEATURENAME* is 'FT_ProximityParagraphs', then the values of *FT_FEATUREVALUE* have the following meanings:
- 'YES' Distances in terms of the document unit PARAGRAPHS supported in <Proximity expansion>.
 - 'NO' Distances in terms of the document unit PARAGRAPHS not supported in <Proximity expansion>.

10.3 FT_SCHEMATA base table

Function

Identify the schemata which include the descriptors of a complete set of types, methods, and functions that are necessary to support the functionality of this part of ISO/IEC 13249.

Definition

```
CREATE TABLE FT_SCHEMATA
(
  CATALOG_NAME          INFORMATION_SCHEMA.SQL_IDENTIFIER,
  SCHEMA_NAME           INFORMATION_SCHEMA.SQL_IDENTIFIER,

  CONSTRAINT FT_SCHEMATA_PRIMARY_KEY
    PRIMARY KEY (CATALOG_NAME, SCHEMA_NAME)
)
```

Description

- 1) All the values of CATALOG_NAME are the name of the catalog in which the schemata identified by SCHEMA_NAME are included.
- 2) The values of SCHEMA_NAME are the unqualified schema names of the schemata in the catalog which include the descriptors of a complete set of types, methods, and functions that are necessary to support the functionality of this part of ISO/IEC 13249.
- 3) *INFORMATION_SCHEMA.SQL_IDENTIFIER* is defined in part 2 of ISO/IEC 9075.

Blank page

11 Status Codes

The character string value returned in an SQLSTATE parameter comprises a 2-character class value followed by a 3-character subclass value. The class value for each condition and the subclass value or values for each class value are specified in Table 1 — SQLSTATE class and subclass values.

The "Category" column has the following meanings: "S" means that the class value given corresponds to successful completion and is a completion condition; "W" means that the class value given corresponds to a successful completion but with a warning and is a completion condition; "N" means that the class value corresponds to a no-data situation and is a completion condition; "X" means that the class value given corresponds to an exception condition.

For a successful completion code but with a warning, the first two characters of the SQLSTATE are equal to the SQLSTATE condition code class value for *warning* (defined in Subclause 22.1, "SQLSTATE" in Part 2 of ISO/IEC 9075) and third character of the SQLSTATE is 'H'.

Table 1 — SQLSTATE class and subclass values

Category	Condition	Class	Subcondition	Subclass
X	SQL/MM Full-Text exception	‡	invalid search expression	F01
X	SQL/MM Full-Text exception	‡	invalid language specification	F02
X	SQL/MM Full-Text exception	‡	effectively empty search expression	F03

‡ If the routine is implemented as an SQL-invoked routine, then the first two characters of the SQLSTATE are equal to the SQLSTATE condition code class for *SQL routine exception* (defined in Subclause 22.1, "SQLSTATE" in ISO/IEC 9075-2).

Otherwise, the routine is implemented as an external routine and the first two characters of the SQLSTATE are equal to the SQLSTATE condition code class for *external routine exception* (defined in Subclause 22.1, "SQLSTATE" in ISO/IEC 9075-2).

Blank page

12 Conformance

*** Editor's Note 2-203 ***

Possible Problem:

PER-026 removed the list of SQL Features required for any given part of SQL/MM to be conformant. Each part of SQL/MM needs to identify any SQL Features beyond Core that are required.

12.1 Requirements for conformance

A conforming implementation shall support the following public user-defined types and routines:

- 1) the *FullText* user-defined type as defined in Subclause 5.1, "FullText Type and Routines" with the following:
 - a) the attribute *Language* and its associated methods,
 - b) the method *Contains(FT_Pattern)*,
 - c) the method *Contains(CHARACTER VARYING)*,
 - d) the method *Rank(FT_Pattern)*,
 - e) the method *Rank(CHARACTER VARYING)*,
 - f) the method *FullText(CHARACTER VARYING)*,
 - g) the method *FullText(CHARACTER VARYING, CHARACTER VARYING)*,
 - h) the cast function *FullText_to_Character(FullText)*.

- 2) the *FT_Pattern* user-defined type as defined in Subclause 5.3, "FT_Pattern Type and Routines".

A conforming implementation shall also support the views in the *FT_INFORMATION_SCHEMA* as defined in Clause 9, "SQL/MM Full-Text Information Schema".

All other user-defined types and routines defined in this part of ISO/IEC 13249 but not listed above are used only to define the semantics of the public user-defined types and routines. A conforming implementation need not support these additional user-defined types and routines for public use.

12.2 Claims of conformance

Claims of conformance to this part of ISO/IEC 13249 shall state:

- 1) The definitions for all elements and actions that this part of ISO/IEC 13049 specifies as implementation-defined.

Blank page

Annex A

(informative)

Implementation-defined elements

This Annex references those features that are identified in the body of this part of ISO/IEC 13249 as implementation-defined.

The term implementation-defined is used to identify characteristics that may differ between implementations, but that shall be defined for each particular implementation.

- 1) Subclause 5.1.1, "FullText Type":
 - a) It is implementation-defined whether the method *Rank(FT_Pattern)* and *Rank(CHARACTER VARYING)* are deterministic or possibly non-deterministic.
- 2) Subclause 5.1.2, "Contains Methods":
 - a) If *pattern* contains a pattern that meets one of the following conditions, then it is implementation-defined whether an exception condition is raised: *SQL/MM Full-Text exception – invalid search expression*:
 - i) A pattern of the form <word> or <stemmed word> specifies a stop word.
 - ii) A pattern of the form <phrase> or <stemmed phrase> contains only stop words, or contains leading or trailing stop words.
 - iii) A pattern of the form <text literal list> contains only stop words.
- 3) Subclause 5.1.3, "Rank Methods":
 - a) The value returned by the *Rank* method is an implementation-dependent *DOUBLE PRECISION* value constrained by implementation-defined minimum and maximum values.
- 4) Subclause 5.1.4, "Tokenize Method":
 - a) It is implementation-defined whether no stop words of *SELF.Contents*, all stop words of *SELF.Contents*, or all stop words of *SELF.Contents* other than leading and trailing stop words are effectively included in the result of *SELF.Tokenize()*. If stop words are included, then it is implementation-defined how they are effectively represented, provided their representation is such that the result of comparing any two stop words is true.
 - b) Further details of the relationship between the input and output of the *Tokenize* method are implementation-defined.
- 5) Subclause 5.1.5, "TokenizePosition Method":
 - a) *corrVal* is zero for the distance units 'WORDS', 'SENTENCES' and 'PARAGRAPHS'; its value is implementation-defined for distance unit 'CHARACTERS'.
 - b) It is implementation-defined whether no stop words of *SELF.Contents*, all stop words of *SELF.Contents*, or all stop words of *SELF.Contents* other than leading and trailing stop words are effectively included in the result of *SELF.TokenizePosition(FullText_Token)*. If stop words are included, then it is implementation-defined how they are effectively represented, provided their representation is such that the result of comparing any two stop words is True.

- c) Further details of the relationship between the input and output of the *TokenizePosition* method are implementation-defined.
- 6) Subclause 5.1.6, "Segmentize Method":
- a) Further details of the relationship between the input and output of the *Segmentize* method are implementation-defined.
- 7) Subclause 5.1.7, "TokenizeAndStem Method":
- a) It is implementation-defined whether no stop words of *SELF.Contents*, all stop words of *SELF.Contents*, or all stop words of *SELF.Contents* other than leading and trailing stop words are effectively included in the result of *SELF.TokenizeAndStem()*. If stop words are included, then it is implementation-defined how they are effectively represented, provided their representation is such that the result of comparing any two stop words is True.
 - b) Further details of the relationship between the input and output of the *TokenizeAndStem* method are implementation-defined.
- 8) Subclause 5.1.8, "TokenizePositionAndStem Method":
- a) It is implementation-defined whether no stop words of *SELF.Contents*, all stop words of *SELF.Contents*, or all stop words of *SELF.Contents* other than leading and trailing stop words are effectively included in the result of *SELF.TokenizePositionAndStem()*. If stop words are included, then it is implementation-defined how they are effectively represented, provided their representation is such that the result of comparing any two stop words is True.
 - b) Further details of the relationship between the input and output of the *TokenizePositionAndStem* method are implementation-defined.
- 9) Subclause 5.3.1, "FT_Pattern Type":
- a) The set of <word representation character>s does not contain <double quote>. Other than that, the set of <word representation character>s is implementation-defined.
 - b) It is implementation-defined whether a specific <word separator> character is needed between two consecutive <phrasepart representation>s.
 - c) The details of the <language specification>, as well as the default language is implementation-defined.
 - d) The document units supported are implementation-defined.
 - e) The characters <thesaurus name character> that can be used to construct thesaurus names are implementation-defined.
- 10) Subclause 6.1.2, "Contains Method":
- a) It is implementation-defined whether an exception condition is raised: *SQL/MM Full-Text exception – invalid search expression*.
- 11) Subclause 6.4.2, "Contains Method":
- a) Let *TL* be the result of the invocation of *text.Tokenize()* and *TLE* be elements of *TL*, normalized in an implementation-defined way, and with leading and trailing blanks removed. Let *T* be *SELF.LitPart*, normalized in an implementation-defined way and with leading and trailing blanks removed.
 - b) If the cardinality of *T* is zero then it is implementation-defined whether

- i) to let R be False, or
- ii) an exception condition is raised: *SQL/MM Full-Text exception – effectively empty search expression*.

12) Subclause 6.4.5, "Tokenize Method":

- a) *Tokenize()* normalizes *SELF.LitPart* in an implementation-defined way. In addition, it is implementation-defined whether stop words are effectively included in the result, and if so, how they are represented. However, a conforming implementation must treat stop words in this method and in the *FullText* method *Tokenize()* in the same way.

13) Subclause 6.5.2, "Contains Method":

- a) Let TL be the result of the invocation of *text.TokenizeAndStem()*. Let TLE be elements of TL , normalized and reduced to stems in an implementation-defined way, and with leading and trailing blanks removed. Let T be *SELF.LitPart*, normalized and reduced to stems in an implementation-defined way, and with leading and trailing blanks removed.
- b) If the cardinality of T is zero then it is implementation-defined whether
 - i) to let R be False, or
 - ii) an exception condition is raised: *SQL/MM Full-Text exception – effectively empty search expression*.

14) Subclause 6.5.4, "TokenizeAndStem Method":

- a) *TokenizeAndStem()* normalizes and stem-reduces *SELF.LitPart* in an implementation-defined way. In addition, it is implementation-defined whether stop words are effectively included in the result, and if so, how they are represented. However, a conforming implementation must treat stop words in this method and in the *FullText* method *TokenizeAndStem()* in the same way.

15) Subclause 6.6.2, "Contains Method":

- a) If the first element of *SELF.PhrasePart* or the last element of *SELF.PhrasePart* is a stop word, or all elements of *SELF.PhrasePart* are stop words, then it is implementation-defined whether an exception condition is raised: *SQL/MM Full-Text exception – invalid search expression*.
- b) Let TL be the result of the invocation of *text.TokenizePosition()* and TLE be elements of TL . Every TLE represents some word of *text* in an implementation-defined normalized way, with leading and trailing blanks removed. It is implementation-defined whether no stop word of *text*, all stop words of *text*, or all stop words of *text* except for leading and trailing stop words are represented by some TLE . If stop words are included, then it is implementation-defined how they are effectively represented, provided their representation is such that the result of comparing any two stop words is True.
- c) Let TPL be the result of *SELF.TokenizePosition()* and TLE be elements of TL . Every TLE *represent()* and let $TPLE$ be the elements of TPL . Every $TPLE$ represents some word of *SELF.PhrasePart* in an implementation-defined normalized way with leading and trailing blanks removed. It is implementation-defined whether no stop word of *SELF.PhrasePart*, all stop words of *SELF.PhrasePart*, or all stop words of *SELF.PhrasePart* except for leading and trailing stop words are represented by some $TPLE$ in an implementation-defined way, provided stop word are dealt with in the same fashion by the *TokenizePosition* methods of the *FullText* and *FT_Phrase* types.
- d) If the cardinality of TPL is zero then it is implementation-defined whether
 - i) to let R be False, or

- ii) an exception condition is raised: *SQL/MM Full-Text exception – effectively empty search expression*.

16) Subclause 6.6.5, "TokenizePosition Method":

- a) *TokenizePosition()* normalizes *SELF.PhrasePart* in an implementation-defined way. In addition, it is implementation-defined whether stop words are effectively included in the result, and if so, how they are represented. However, a conforming implementation must treat stop words in this method and in the *FullText* method *TokenizePosition(FullText_Token)* in the same way.

17) Subclause 6.7.2, "Contains Method":

- a) If the first element of *SELF.PhrasePart* or the last element of *SELF.PhrasePart* is a stop word, or all elements of *SELF.PhrasePart* are stop words, then it is implementation-defined whether an exception condition is raised: *SQL/MM Full-Text exception – invalid search expression*.
- b) Let *TL* be the result of the invocation of *text.TokenizePositionAndStem()* and *TLE* be elements of *TL*. Every *TLE* represents some word of *text* reduced to its base reduced form and in an implementation-defined normalized way, with leading and trailing blanks removed. It is implementation-defined whether no stop word of *text*, all stop words of *text*, or all stop words of *text* except for leading and trailing stop words are represented by some *TLE*. If stop words are included, then it is implementation-defined how they are effectively represented, provided their representation is such that the result of comparing any two stop words is *True*.
- c) Let *TPL* be the result of *SELF.TokenizePositionAndStem()*. Every element *TPLE* of *TPL* represents some word of *SELF.PhrasePart* reduced to its base reduced form and represented in an implementation-defined normalized way, with leading and trailing blanks removed. It is implementation-defined whether no stop word of *SELF.PhrasePart*, all stop words of *SELF.PhrasePart*, or all stop words of *SELF.PhrasePart* except for leading and trailing stop words are represented by some *TPLE* in an implementation-defined way, provided stop word are dealt with in the same fashion by the *TokenizePositionAndStem* methods of the *FullText* and *FT_StemmedPhrase* types.

18) Subclause 6.7.4, "TokenizePositionAndStem Method":

- a) *TokenizePositionAndStem()* normalizes and stem-reduces the sequence of words represented by *SELF.PhrasePart* in an implementation-defined way. In addition, it is implementation-defined whether stop words are effectively included in the result, and if so, how they are represented.

19) Subclause 6.10.4, "FT_Fuzzy ”:

- a) Though not enforced by this standard, *spi* is intended to represent a spelling pattern which is potentially equivalent to a number of tokens. The equivalence is language dependent and implementation-dependent.

20) Subclause 6.11.1, "FT_BroaderTerm Type"

- a) The number of available thesauri and their names are implementation-defined.

21) Subclause 6.11.5, "GetBroaderTerms Function":

- a) It is implementation-defined, whether a check is made to ensure that the language specified in *startingTerm.Language* is compatible with the thesaurus as specified by *thes_name*, and if so, what kind of condition is raised in case of a language incompatibility.

22) Subclause 6.12.1, "FT_NarrowerTerm Type":

- a) The number of available thesauri and their names are implementation-defined.

23) Subclause 6.12.5, "GetNarrowerTerms Function":

ISO/IEC CD 13249-2:2002(E)

- a) It is implementation-defined, whether a check is made to ensure that the language specified in *startingTerm.Language* is compatible with the thesaurus as specified by *thes_name*, and if so, what kind of condition is raised in case of a language incompatibility.
- 24) Subclause 6.13.1, "FT_Synonym Type":
- a) The number of available thesauri and their names are implementation-defined.
- 25) Subclause 6.13.5, "GetSynonymTerms Function":
- a) It is implementation-defined, whether a check is made to ensure that the language specified in *startingTerm.Language* is compatible with the thesaurus as specified by *thes_name*, and if so, what kind of condition is raised in case of a language incompatibility.
- 26) Subclause 6.14.1, "FT_PREFERREDTERM Type":
- a) The number of available thesauri and their names are implementation-defined.
- 27) Subclause 6.14.5, "GetPreferredTerms Function":
- a) It is implementation-defined, whether a check is made to ensure that the language specified in *startingTerm.Language* is compatible with the thesaurus as specified by *thes_name*, and if so, what kind of condition is raised in case of a language incompatibility.
- 28) Subclause 6.15.1, "FT_RelatedTerm Type":
- a) The number of available thesauri and their names are implementation-defined.
- 29) Subclause 6.15.5, "GetRelatedTerms Function":
- a) It is implementation-defined, whether a check is made to ensure that the language specified in *startingTerm.Language* is compatible with the thesaurus as specified by *thes_name*, and if so, what kind of condition is raised in case of a language incompatibility.
- 30) Subclause 6.16.1, "FT_TopTerm Type":
- a) The number of available thesauri and their names are implementation-defined.
- 31) Subclause 6.16.5, "GetTopTerms Function":
- a) It is implementation-defined, whether a check is made to ensure that the language specified in *startingTerm.Language* is compatible with the thesaurus as specified by *thes_name*, and if so, what kind of condition is raised in case of a language incompatibility.
- 32) Subclause 6.17.2, "Contains Method":
- a) *Contains(FullText)* tests whether a given *FullText* item is pertinent to the *FT_WordOrPhrase* item of a given *FT_IsAbout* value. The result is subject to implementation-defined criteria of pertinence.
- 33) Subclause 7.1, "FullText_Token Type":
- a) The function *p* returns *True* if and only if the character string *VALUE* is a valid token. It is implementation-defined whether a character string is a valid token.
- 34) Subclause 8.3, "TERM_DICTIONARY base table":
- a) The number of available thesauri and their names are implementation-defined.

35) Subclause 8.4, "TERM_HIERARCHY base table":

- a) The number of available thesauri and their names are implementation-defined.

36) Subclause 8.5, "TERM_SYNONYM base table":

- a) The number of available thesauri and their names are implementation-defined.

37) Subclause 8.6, "TERM_RELATED base table":

- a) The number of available thesauri and their names are implementation-defined.

A.1 Implementation-defined Meta-variables

- 1) *FT_MaxTextLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a *FullText* value.
- 2) *FT_MaxLanguageLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a language specification.
- 3) *FT_DefaultLanguage* is an implementation-defined character string literal which denotes the implementation-defined default language. The length of *FT_DefaultLanguage* does not exceed *FT_MaxLanguageLength*.
- 4) *FT_ThesNameLength* is the implementation-defined maximum length for the character representation of a thesaurus name.
- 5) *FT_RankDeterminism* is either NOT DETERMINISTIC or DETERMINISTIC.

Annex B

(informative)

Implementation-dependent elements

This Annex references those places where this part of ISO/IEC 13249 states explicitly that the actions of a conforming implementation are implementation-dependent.

The term implementation-dependent is used to identify characteristics that may differ between implementations, but that are not necessarily specified for any particular implementation.

- 1) Subclause 5.1.3, "Rank Methods":
 - a) The value returned by the *Rank* method is an implementation-dependent *DOUBLE PRECISION* value constrained by implementation-defined minimum and maximum values.
- 2) Subclause 6.9.4, "FT_Soundex Method":
 - a) Though not enforced by this standard, *snd* is intended to represent a sound pattern which is potentially equivalent to a number of tokens. The equivalence is language dependent and implementation-dependent.
- 3) Subclause 6.9.5, "GetSoundsSimilar Function":
 - a) *GetSoundsSimilar(FT_TextLiteral)* permits the generation of an array of *FT_TextLiteral* items (representing a set of words) each of which has a different form though it has similar pronunciation as the input word. The input argument *spoken* is included in the generated array of tokens. The mechanism for generating this array, taking into account the language as specified in *spoken.Language*, is implementation-dependent.
 - b) If the input parameter *spoken* or *spoken.LitPart* is the null value, then the result of *GetSoundsSimilar(FT_TextLiteral)* is the null value. Further details of *GetSoundsSimilar(FT_TextLiteral)* are implementation-dependent.

B.1 Implementation-dependent Meta-variables

- 1) *FT_MaxArrayLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for an array.
- 2) *FT_MaxPatternLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for the character representation of an *FT_Pattern* value.
- 3) *FT_MaxTokenLength* is the implementation-dependent maximum length for the character representation of a *FullText_Token* value.

Blank page

Index

An index entry appearing in **boldface** indicates a range of pages where a user-defined type is defined in this part of ISO/IEC 13249. All other index entries appear in roman type.

An index page number appearing in **boldface** indicates a page or range of pages where the attribute, routine, or user-defined type is specified. An index page number appearing in *italics* indicates a page where the word, phrase, attribute, routine, or user-defined type is defined. An index page number appearing in roman type indicates a page where the word, phrase, attribute, routine, or type was used.



<about expansion>, 42, 44, 56, 175
 <ampersand>, 41, 46
 <Broader_Term expansion>, 43, 45, 48, 50, 53, 132
 <comma>, 43, 44
 <context argument>, 44, 50
 <context condition>, 8, 13, 15, 41, 44, 50, 181, 215
 <context unit>, 44, 45
 <distance>, 43
 <double quote>, 42, 43, 44, 75, 79, 80, 81, 86, 88, 97, 110, 111, 223
 <doublequote symbol>, 42, 44, 75, 79, 80, 81, 86, 88, 97, 110, 111
 <escape representation character>, 42, 45, 96
 <escape specification>, 42, 45
 <expansion function invocation>, 8, 42, 43, 44
 <Fuzzy expansion>, 43, 45, 49, 51, 52, 126
 <key word>, 9, 27, 29, 44, 57
 <language specification>, 42, 45, 47, 48, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 223
 <left paren>, 41, 43, 44, 51, 186
 <Narrower_Term expansion>, 43, 44, 45, 48, 50, 53, 140
 <optional word representation>, 42
 <order>, 43
 <phrase >, 19
 <phrase part representation>, 14
 <phrase representation>, 42, 45
 <phrase>, 8, 14, 17, 18, 19, 27, 41, 42, 44, 45, 47, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 62, 90, 94, 103, 222
 <phrasepart representation>, 14, 19, 42, 45
 <Preferred_Term expansion>, 43, 44, 45, 49, 50, 55, 155
 <Proximity expansion>, 8, 11, 14, 15, 42, 43, 48, 117, 214, 215
 <Related_Term expansion>, 43, 44, 45, 49, 51, 54, 162
 <right paren>, 41, 43, 44, 51, 186
 <search expression>, 8, 26, 27, 28, 41, 45, 47, 51, 186, 194, 195
 <search factor>, 8, 16, 41, 46
 <search primary>, 8, 16, 41
 <search term>, 8, 41, 46, 190, 191
 <Soundex expansion>, 43, 45, 49, 51, 52, 121
 <stemmed phrase>, 8, 14, 18, 19, 27, 41, 42, 45, 47, 50, 51, 62, 108, 222
 <stemmed word>, 8, 11, 18, 19, 27, 41, 42, 43, 45, 46, 47, 48, 50, 51, 62, 86, 222
 <Synonym expansion>, 43, 44, 45, 48, 49, 50, 54
 <text function invocation>, 41, 42
 <text literal list>, 8, 13, 19, 27, 44, 199, 222
 <text literal>, 41, 43, 44, 45, 50, 53, 54
 <thesaurus expansion count>, 43, 44, 53, 54

<thesaurus name character>, 43, 44, 45, 223
 <thesaurus name representation>, 43
 <thesaurus specification>, 43, 44
 <token list>, 8, 11, 19, 39, 43
 <token list1>, 43, 48
 <token list2>, 43, 48
 <Top_Term expansion>, 43, 44, 45, 49, 51, 55, 169
 <unit>, 43, 45
 <unsigned integer>, 43, 44
 <vertical bar>, 41, 45
 <word or phrase>, 44
 <word representation character>, 42, 44, 45
 <word representation part>, 42, 44
 <word representation>, 42, 44, 45, 90, 103
 <word separator>, 42, 45, 223
 <word specification>, 43
 <word>, 8, 11, 18, 19, 27, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 48, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 62, 75, 222

—A—

ABOUT, 17, 44, 57, 175
 AND, 44, 57, 181
 ANY, 43, 57, 116
 AS, 15, 44, 57, 181

—B—

BROADER, 43, 57, 132
 broader term, 5, 6, 10, 13, 129, 130, 134, 136, 172

—C—

CATALOG_NAME column. See *FT_SCHEMATA base table*
 CHARACTERS, 31, 43, 45, 57, 114, 214, 222
 contain, 6, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 19, 23, 27, 32, 35, 44, 45, 47, 56, 57, 62, 70, 74, 90, 97, 103, 110, 130, 138, 146, 151, 166, 205, 222, 223
 Contains method. See *FT_Any, FT_BroaderTerm, FT_Context, FT_Expr, FT_Fuzzy, FT_IsAbout, FT_NarrowerTerm, FT_ParExpr, FT_PerferredTerm, FT_Phrase, FT_PhraseList, FT_Primary, FT_Proxi, FT_RelatedTerm, FT_Soundex, FT_StemmedPhrase, FT_StemmedWord, FT_Synonym, FT_Term, FT_TextLiteral, FT_TopTerm, FT_WordOrPhrase, or FullText*
 coordinate relation, 5

—E—

EliminateDQS function. See *FT_TextLiteral*
 ESCAPE, 42, 57, 73, 75, 84, 86, 93, 94, 108

EXPAND, 11, 13, 43, 44, 57, 132, 140, 148, 155, 162, 169
 EXPR column. *See* *TERM_DICTIONARY* base table

—F—

FOR, 43, 44, 53, 54, 57, 132, 140

FORM, 11, 14, 42, 43, 57, 86, 108, 126

FROM, 57

FT_Any, 60–63

Contains method, 60, **61–62**, 120, 125, 131, 139, 147, 154, 161, 168

FT_Any method, 60, **63**, 120, 125, 131, 139, 147, 154, 161, 168

type, 27, 59, **60**

FT_Any method. *See* *FT_Any*

FT_BroaderTerm, 129–36

Contains method, 53, 129, **131**

FT_BroaderTerm method, 129, **133**

GetBroaderTerms function, 48, 50, 129, 131, **134–36**

StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern method, 48, 50, 53, 129, **132**

type, 48, 50, 53, 59, **129–30**

FT_BroaderTerm method. *See* *FT_BroaderTerm*

FT_Context, 177–83

Contains method, 51, 177, **178–80**

FT_Context method, 177, **183**

StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern method, 51, 177, **181–82**

type, 51, 59, **177**

FT_Context method. *See* *FT_Context*

FT_DefaultLanguage, 23, 25, 213, 214, 227

FT_DEFINITION_SCHEMA schema, 211, 212

FT_Expr, 192–95

Contains method, 27, 185, 192, **193**

FT_Expr method, 192, **195**

StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern method, 27, 186, 192, **194**

type, 27, 59, 184, **192**

FT_Expr method. *See* *FT_Expr*

FT_FEATURENAME column. *See* *FT_FEATURES* base table

FT_FEATURES base table, 211, **213**

FT_FEATURENAME, 213, 214, 215

FT_FEATURENAME column, 213

FT_FEATURES_CHECK constraint, 213

FT_FEATURES_PRIMARY_KEY constraint, 213

FT_FEATUREVALUE column, 213, 214, 215

FT_FEATURES view, **211**

FT_FEATURES_CHECK constraint. *See*

FT_FEATURES base table

FT_FEATURES_PRIMARY_KEY constraint. *See*

FT_FEATURES base table

FT_FEATUREVALUE column. *See* *FT_FEATURES* base table

FT_Fuzzy, 124–28

Contains method, 53, 124, **125**

FT_Fuzzy method, 124, **127**

GetSpelledSimilar function, 49, 51, 124, 125, **128**

StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern method, 49, 51, 52, 124

type, 49, 51, 52, 59, **124**

FT_Fuzzy method. *See* *FT_Fuzzy*

FT_GetNarrowerTerms function, 137

FT_INFORMATION_SCHEMA schema, 210, 212, 220

FT_IsAbout, 173–76

Contains method, 56, 173, **174**, 226

FT_IsAbout method, 173, **176**

StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern method, 56, 173, **175** type, 56, 59, **173**, 226

FT_IsAbout method. *See* *FT_IsAbout*

FT_MaxArrayLength, 24, 30, 31, 33, 34, 35, 39, 60,

61, 62, 63, 67, 70, 72, 78, 89, 91, 92, 95, 96, 97, 99, 101, 102, 104, 105, 109, 110, 112, 114, 115, 118, 123, 128, 131, 134, 135, 139, 142, 143, 147, 150, 151, 154, 157, 158, 161, 164, 165, 168, 171, 172, 177, 178, 179, 183, 188, 191, 192, 195, 196, 197, 198, 200, 228

FT_MaxLanguageLength, 23, 24, 25, 37, 71, 72, 79, 82, 88, 89, 90, 97, 99, 100, 102, 110, 213, 214, 227

FT_MaxPatternLength, 23, 25, 26, 28, 39, 41, 66, 69, 75, 81, 86, 94, 108, 117, 121, 126, 132, 140, 148, 155, 162, 169, 175, 181, 186, 190, 194, 199, 228

FT_MaxTextLength, 23, 24, 25, 37, 38, 213, 214, 227

FT_MaxTokenLength, 202, 228

FT_NarrowerTerm, 137–44

Contains method, 53, 137, **139**

FT_NarrowerTerm method, 137, **141**

GetNarrowerTerms function, 48, 50, 139, **142–44**

StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern method, 48, 50, 53, 137, **140**

type, 48, 50, 53, 59, **137–38**

FT_NarrowerTerm method. *See* *FT_NarrowerTerm*

FT_ParExpr, 184–87

Contains method, 52, 184, **185**

FT_ParExpr method, 184, **187**

StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern method, 52, 184, **186** type, 51, 59, **184**

FT_ParExpr method. *See* *FT_ParExpr*

FT_Pattern, 41–57

Rank method, 20

StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern method, **63**

type, 20, 23, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 39, **41–56**, 66, 69, 71, 75, 81, 82, 86, 89, 94, 102, 108, 112, 117, 119, 121, 124, 126, 129, 132, 137, 140, 145, 148, 152, 155, 159, 162, 166, 169, 173, 175, 177, 181, 184, 186, 188, 190, 192, 194, 196, 199, 220, 222, 228

FT_Phrase, 89–101

Contains method, 48, 89, 90, **91–93**, 197, 198

FT_Phrase method, 89, 90, **97–98**

getWordArray method, 89, 90, **95**

matches method, **99–100**

prune function, **101**

StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern method, 47, 89, 90, **94**, 199

TokenizePosition method, 89, 90, 91, **96**, 224, 225

type, 27, 47, 59, **89–90**, 92, 102, 196, 200, 224

FT_Phrase method. *See* *FT_Phrase*

FT_PhraseList, 196–200

Contains method, 196, **197–98**

FT_PhraseList method, 196, **200**

StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern method, 196, **199**

type, 59, 177, 183, **196**

FT_PhraseList method. *See* *FT_PhraseList*

FT_PREFERREDTERM, 152–58

Contains method, 55, 152, **154**

FT_PREFERREDTERM method, 152, **156**

- GetPreferredTerms function, 49, 51, 152, 154, **157–58**
- StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern method, 49, 50, 55, **152, 155**
- type, 49, 50, 55, 59, **152–53**
- FT_PreferredTerm method. *See FT_PreferredTerm*
- FT_Primary, 64–66**
- Contains method, **64, 65, 119, 189**
- FT_Soundex method, **119**
- GetSoundsSimilar function, **119, 120**
- StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern method, **64, 66, 119, 190**
- type, **59, 64, 112, 119, 124, 129, 137, 145, 152, 159, 166, 173, 177, 184, 188, 189, 191**
- FT_Proxi, 112–18**
- Contains method, **50, 112, 114–16**
- FT_Proxi method, **112, 113, 118**
- StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern method, **50, 112, 113, 117**
- type, **50, 59, 112–13**
- FT_Proxi method. *See FT_Proxi*
- FT_RankDeterminism, **23, 25, 227**
- FT_RelatedTerm, 159–65**
- Contains method, **54, 159, 161**
- FT_RelatedTerm method, **159, 163**
- GetRelatedTerms function, **49, 51, 159, 161, 164–65**
- StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern method, **49, 51, 54, 159, 162**
- type, **49, 51, 54, 59, 159–60**
- FT_RelatedTerm method. *See FT_RelatedTerm*
- FT_SCHEMATA base table, **211, 216**
- CATALOG_NAME column, **211, 216**
- FT_SCHEMATA_PRIMARY_KEY constraint, **216**
- SCHEMA_NAME column, **211, 216**
- FT_SCHEMATA view, **211**
- FT_SCHEMATA_PRIMARY_KEY constraint. *See FT_SCHEMATA base table*
- FT_Soundex, 119–23**
- Contains method, **52, 120**
- FT_Soundex method, **121–22**
- GetSoundsSimilar function, **49, 51, 123, 228**
- StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern method, **49, 51, 52, 121**
- type, **49, 51, 52, 59, 119**
- FT_Soundex method. *See FT_Soundex*
- FT_StemmedPhrase, 102–11**
- Contains method, **48, 102, 103, 104–7**
- FT_StemmedPhrase method, **102, 103, 110–11**
- StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern method, **47, 102, 103, 108**
- TokenizePositionAndStem method, **102, 103, 104, 105, 109, 225**
- type, **27, 47, 59, 102–3**
- FT_StemmedPhrase method. *See FT_StemmedPhrase*
- FT_StemmedWord, 82–88**
- Contains method, **47, 82, 84–85, 116**
- FT_StemmedWord method, **82, 83, 88**
- StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern method, **47, 82, 83, 86**
- TokenizeAndStem method, **82, 83, 84, 87, 224**
- type, **27, 47, 59, 82–83**
- FT_StemmedWord method. *See FT_StemmedWord*
- FT_Synonym, 145–51**
- Contains method, **54, 145, 147**
- FT_Synonym method, **145, 149**
- GetSynonymTerms function, **48, 49, 50, 145, 147, 150–51**
- StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern method, **48, 49, 50, 54, 145, 148**
- type, **48, 49, 50, 54, 59, 145–46**
- FT_Synonym method. *See FT_Synonym*
- FT_Term, 188–91**
- Contains method, **188, 189, 193**
- FT_Term method, **21, 188, 191**
- StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern method, **188, 190, 194**
- type, **59, 184, 188, 192, 193, 195**
- FT_Term method. *See FT_Term*
- FT_TextLiteral, 71–81**
- Contains method, **21, 47, 71, 72, 73–74, 116**
- EliminateDQS function, **72, 79, 80, 88, 97, 110, 111**
- FT_TextLiteral method, **21, 71, 72, 79, 99**
- getWordArray method, **72, 78**
- InsertDQS function, **72, 75, 81, 86, 94, 108**
- matches method, **71, 72, 76, 99**
- StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern method, **21, 47, 71, 72, 75, 126**
- Tokenize method, **71, 72, 73, 77, 84, 224**
- type, **27, 47, 59, 71–72, 82, 87, 112, 113, 118, 119, 122, 123, 124, 127, 128, 228**
- FT_TextLiteral method. *See FT_TextLiteral*
- FT_THESAURUS authorization, **205**
- FT_THESAURUS schema, **205**
- FT_ThesNameLength, **129, 133, 134, 135, 137, 141, 142, 143, 145, 149, 150, 151, 152, 156, 157, 158, 159, 163, 164, 165, 166, 170, 171, 172, 206, 207, 208, 209, 213, 214, 227**
- FT_TokenPosition, 40**
- type, **24, 40, 91, 93, 96, 99, 100, 101, 102, 104, 106, 109, 114**
- FT_TopTerm, 166–72**
- Contains method, **55, 166, 168**
- FT_TopTerm method, **166, 170**
- GetTopTerms function, **49, 51, 166, 168, 171–72**
- StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern method, **49, 51, 55, 166, 169**
- type, **49, 51, 55, 59, 166–67**
- FT_TopTerm method. *See FT_TopTerm*
- FT_WordOrPhrase, 66–70**
- Contains method, **62, 67, 68**
- getWordArray method, **67, 70, 134, 142, 150, 157, 164, 171**
- StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern method, **67, 69**
- type, **39, 59, 60, 63, 67, 71, 89, 129, 131, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 139, 141, 142, 143, 145, 147, 149, 150, 151, 152, 154, 156, 157, 158, 159, 161, 163, 164, 165, 166, 168, 170, 171, 172, 173, 174, 176, 206, 226**
- FullText, 23–39**
- Contains method, **8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 23, 25, 26–27, 41, 45, 46, 47, 48, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56**
- Contents attribute, **23, 25, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 222, 223**
- FullText method, **20, 24, 25, 37, 115, 116**
- FullText_to_Character function, **20, 24, 25, 38**
- Language attribute, **20, 23, 25, 30, 32, 33, 34, 36**
- Rank method, **17, 19, 20, 23, 25, 28–29, 222**
- Segmentize method, **24, 33, 178, 179, 223**

StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern function, **39**, 48, 49, 50, 51
 Tokenize method, **24**, **30**, 62, 73, 77, 197, 198, 222, 223
 TokenizeAndStem method, **24**, **34**, 84, 223
 TokenizePosition method, **24**, **31–32**, 91, 92, 114, 115, 222, 223
 TokenizePositionAndStem method, **24**, **35–36**, 104, 105, 109, 223
 type, 7, 8, 17, 18, 20, **23–25**, 41, 45, 60, 61, 62, 64, 65, 67, 68, 71, 72, 73, 74, 77, 82, 84, 85, 87, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 96, 102, 103, 104, 105, 106, 109, 112, 114, 115, 116, 119, 120, 124, 125, 129, 131, 137, 139, 145, 147, 152, 154, 159, 161, 166, 168, 173, 174, 177, 178, 179, 184, 185, 188, 189, 192, 193, 196, 197, 198, 224
 FullText method. *See FullText*
 FullText_to_Character function. *See FullText*
 FullText_Token, **202**
 domain, 24, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 40, 61, 67, 70, 71, 72, 75, 76, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83, 86, 88, 89, 90, 95, 96, 97, 102, 103, 110, 111, 112, 113, 118, 134, 142, 150, 157, 164, 171, 177, 183, 197, **202**, 222, 225, 228
 FUZZY, 43, 57, 126
 fuzzy term, 5

—G—

GetBroaderTerms function. *See FT_BroaderTerm*
 GetNarrowerTerms. *See FT_NarrowerTerm*
 GetPreferredTerms function. *See FT_PREFERREDTerms*
 GetRelatedTerms function. *See FT_RelatedTerm*
 GetSoundsSimilar function. *See FT_Soundex*
 GetSpelledSimilar function. *See FT_Fuzzy*
 GetSynonymTerms functions. *See FT_Synonyms*
 GetTopTerms function. *See FT_TopTerm*
 getWordArray method. *See FT_Phrase*, *FT_TextLiteral*, or *FT_WordOrPhrase*

—H—

hierarchical relation, 5, 6

—I—

immediately contain, 6, 45, 47, 50, 53, 54
 IN, 15, 43, 44, 57, 115, 116, 181
 INFORMATION_SCHEMA schema, 211, 216
 InsertDQS function. *See FT_TextLiteral*
 IS, 17, 44, 57, 175

—L—

LEVEL, 43, 44, 57
 LEVELS, 43, 44, 53, 54, 57, 132, 140
 LIKE, 43, 57, 76, 85, 121

—M—

matches method. *See FT_Phrase* or *FT_TextLiteral*

—N—

NARROWER, 44, 57, 140

narrower term, 5, 10, 13, 137, 138, 142, 143, 144, 166, 207
 NARROWER_TERMID column. *See TERM_HIERARCHY base table*
 NEAR, 14, 15, 43, 57, 117
 NOT, 8, 16, 17, 41, 46, 57, 74, 75, 85, 86, 93, 94, 106, 108, 116, 117, 121, 126, 132, 140, 148, 155, 162, 169, 175, 179, 181, 186

—O—

OF, 11, 13, 14, 42, 43, 44, 57, 86, 108, 126, 132, 140, 148, 155, 162, 169
 ORDER, 15, 43, 57, 115, 116

—P—

PARAGRAPH, 15, 31, 33, 44, 45, 57, 215
 PARAGRAPHS, 31, 43, 45, 57, 114, 215, 222
 PREFERRED, 44, 57, 155
 preferred term, 5, 10, 13, 152, 153, 157, 158, 208
 PREFERRED_TERMID column. *See TERM_SYNONYM base table*
 PROXIMITY, 57
 prune function. *See FT_Phrase*

—R—

Rank method. *See FullText*
 RELATED, 44, 57, 162
 related term, 5, 159, 164, 165, 209
 RELATED_TERMID column. *See TERM_RELATED base table*

—S—

SAME, 15, 44, 57, 181
 SCHEMA_NAME column. *See FT_SCHEMATA base table*
 SCHEMATA table, 211
 CATALOG_NAME column, 211
 DEFAULT_CHARACTER_SET_CATALOG column, 211
 DEFAULT_CHARACTER_SET_NAME column, 211
 DEFAULT_CHARACTER_SET_SCHEMA column, 211
 SCHEMA_NAME column, 211
 SCHEMA_OWNER column, 211
 Segmentize method. *See FullText*
 SENTENCE, 15, 31, 33, 44, 45, 57, 215
 SENTENCES, 15, 31, 43, 45, 57, 114, 215, 222
 simply contain, 6, 14, 19, 45
 soundex term, 5
 SOUNDS, 43, 57, 121
 SQL_IDENTIFIER domain, 216
 SQL-invoked routine, 6, 218
 SQLSTATE
 2F
 SQL routine exception, 218
 2FF01
 invalid search expression, 26, 27, 28, 62, 92, 105, 218, 222, 223, 224, 225
 2FF02
 invalid language specification, 37, 218
 2FF03

effectively empty search expression, 74, 85, 93, 106, 218, 224, 225

38

external routine exception, 218

38F01. *See* SQLSTATE: 2FF01

38F02. *See* SQLSTATE: 2FF02

38F03. *See* SQLSTATE: 2FF03

STEMMED, 11, 14, 42, 47, 48, 50, 51, 57, 86, 108

StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern function. *See* FullText

StrctPattern_to_FT_Pattern method. *See* FT_BroaderTerm, FT_Context, FT_Expr, FT_Fuzzy, FT_IsAbout, FT_NarrowerTerm, FT_ParExpr, FT_PerferredTerm, FT_Phrase, FT_PhraseList, FT_Primary, FT_Proxi, FT_RelatedTerm, FT_Soundex, FT_StemmedPhrase, FT_StemmedWord, FT_Synonym, FT_Term, FT_TextLiteral, FT_TopTerm, or FT_WordOrPhrase

SYNONYM, 11, 13, 44, 57, 148

synonym term, 6, 150, 151, 208

SYNONYM_TERMID column. *See* TERM_SYNONYM base table

—T—

TERM, 11, 13, 43, 44, 57, 132, 140, 148, 155, 162, 169, 172

TERM_DICTIONARY base table, 134, 135, 142, 143, 150, 157, 164, 171, 206, 207, 208, 209

EXPR column, 134, 135, 142, 143, 150, 157, 164, 171, 206

NARROWER_TERMID column, 143

RELATED_TERMID column, 209

TERMID column, 134, 135, 142, 143, 150, 157, 164, 171, 206, 207, 209

THNAME_DIC column, 134, 135, 142, 143, 150, 157, 164, 171, 206

THNAME_REL column, 209

TERM_HIERARCH base table

TERMID column, 171

TERM_HIERARCHY base table, 134, 142, 171, 206, 207

NARROWER_TERMID column, 134, 142, 171, 207

TERMID column, 134, 142, 171, 207

THNAME_HRR column, 134, 142, 171, 207

TERM_RELATED base table, 164, 206, 209

RELATED_TERMID column, 164

TERMID column, 164

THNAME_REL column, 164

TERM_SYNONYM base table, 150, 157, 158, 208, 227

PERFERRED_TERMID column, 208

PREFERRED_TERMID column, 157, 158, 208

SYNONYM_TERMID column, 150, 208

SYNOYNM_TERMID column, 150

TERMID column, 150, 158, 208

THNAME_SYN column, 150, 157, 158, 208

TERM_SYNONYM table, 206

TERMID column. *See* TERM_DICTIONARY base table, TERM_HIERARCHY base table, TERM_RELATED base table, or TERM_SYNONYM base table

TextLiteral

type, 82

thesaurus, 6, 11, 13, 48, 51, 129, 130, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 138, 141, 142, 143, 144, 145, 146, 149, 150, 151, 152, 153, 156, 157, 158, 159, 163, 164, 165, 166, 170, 171, 172, 204, 206, 207, 208, 209, 214, 225, 226, 227

THESAURUS, 11, 13, 43, 44, 57, 132, 140, 148, 155, 162, 169, 204

THNAME_DIC column. *See* TERM_DICTIONARY base table

THNAME_HRR column. *See* TERM_HIERARCHY base table

THNAME_REL column. *See* TERM_RELATED base table

THNAME_SYN column. *See* TERM_SYNONYM base table

Tokenize method. *See* FT_TextLiteral or FullText

TokenizeAndStem method. *See* FT_StemmedWord or FullText

TokenizePosition method. *See* FT_Phrase or FullText

TokenizePositionAndStem method. *See* FT_StemmedPhrase or FullText

TOP, 44, 57, 169

top term, 6, 10, 13, 166, 171, 172

—W—

WITHIN, 14, 15, 43, 57, 117

WORDS, 31, 32, 43, 45, 57, 91, 92, 114, 214, 222